CHAPTER 4 [CE]

COMMERCIAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SECTION C401
GENERAL

C401.1 Scope. The provisions in this chapter are applicable to commercial buildings and their building sites.

C401.2 Application. Commercial buildings shall comply with one of the following:

1. **Prescriptive Path.** The requirements of ((~~Sections C402, C403, C404, C405, C406, C408, C409, C410 and C411~~)) all of Chapter 4, other than Sections C401.3 and C407.
2. **Total Building Performance Path.** The requirements of Section C407.
3. ((~~When adopted by the local jurisdiction, the requirements of Appendix F, Outcome Based Energy Budget, Sections C408, C409, C410, C411 and any specific section in Table C407.2 as determined by the local jurisdiction. The Proposed Total UA of the proposed building shall be no more than 20 percent higher than the Allowed Total UA as defined in Section C402.1.5.~~)) Appendix F is not adopted by The City of Seattle.
4. **Target Performance Path.** The requirements of Section C401.3.

C401.2.1 Application to existing buildings. Work on existing buildings shall comply with Chapter 5 in addition to the applicable provisions of Chapter 4.

C401.3 Target Performance Path.

C401.3.1 Scope. Buildings of the following occupancy types, including their initial tenant improvements, are permitted to conform to the Target Performance Path as described in this section and are not required to comply with Seattle Energy Code requirements other than the mandatory measures listed in Section C401.3.3.

1. Group B office.
2. Group B medical office.
3. Group R-2 multi-family over three stories.
4. Group S-1 & S-2 warehouse (non-refrigerated).
5. Group E school.
6. Group M retail.
7. Group I-2 hospital.
8. Other occupancy type, where specific permission is granted by the *code official.* Any such permission, if granted, shall be made on the basis of an energy use target *approved* by the *code official* for that occupancy based on the best-performing local examples of that occupancy, adjusted to recognize the additional stringency of the current energy code.
9. Mixed use: A mixed use building is any building containing more than one of the occupancies listed in items 1 through 8 above.

C401.3.1.1 Increased building performance factor. Each building conforming to this section is permitted to have a building performance factor (BPF) no greater than 1.12 times the maximum BPF permitted by Table C407.3(2).

C401.3.1.2 Conversion of energy use to carbon emissions. Energy use in Target Performance Path calculations shall be converted to carbon emissions according to Table C407.3(1).

C401.3.2 Data center energy. Anticipated total *data center* energy use is permitted to be added to the overall building energy usage target in accordance with this section. The anticipated *IT energy* usage shall be multiplied by a factor of 1.45 to determine the anticipated total *data center* energy use. The *IT energy* usage shall be separately sub-metered in a secure manner *approved* by the *code official* and automatically exported to the *code official* showing daily, monthly and annual totals during the operational energy use demonstration period set forth in Section C401.3.6. Actual *IT energy* shall be adjusted in accordance with Section C401.3.7.

C401.3.3 Mandatory measures. Buildings using the Target Performance Path shall:

1. Not exceed the building performance factor (BPF) permitted by Section C401.3.1.1;
2. Not use fossil fuel combustion or electric resistance appliances for purposes of space heating or domestic water heating;
3. Have a building envelope with a Proposed Total UA no greater than the Allowable Total UA as determined by Section C407.3.1; and
4. Comply with the mandatory measures listed in Table C407.2.

C401.3.4 Energy modeling methodology. Energy use shall be modeled according to the requirements of Section C407, Total Building Performance:

Schedules, internal loads and other assumptions related to the operation of the building are permitted to be developed at the discretion of the design team and the energy modeler. For occupancy types listed in Appendix B of this code, where any of the following operating loads or schedules of operating hours used in modeling calculations is less than 80 percent of that listed in Appendix B, or where the occupant density in square feet per occupant is more than 120 percent of that listed in Appendix B, such deviations shall be clearly documented in the final analysis report and are subject to approval by the *code official.*

1. Occupant density and schedule
2. Lighting operation schedule
3. Receptacle loads and schedule
4. Elevator and escalator schedule
5. Water heating quantity and schedule

In addition to documenting modeling assumptions, the application documentation required by Section G1.3.2 of ASHRAE 90.1, Appendix G, shall include the following:

1. Summary of principal building characteristics that are above or below prescriptive energy code requirements.
2. Sensitivity analysis of principal internal load and other building operational assumptions that demonstrate a range of expected energy performance in the context of typical meteorological year (TMY) conditions. The following sensitivity analyses shall be reported, in tabular format:
   - 2.1. Occupant density +/- 20 percent (except residential occupancies)
   - 2.2. Lighting Power Density +/- 20 percent
   - 2.3. Miscellaneous Load Power Density +/- 20 percent
   - 2.4. Infiltration Rates +/- 20 percent
   - 2.5. Temperature Setpoints +/- 2 degrees F

TABLE C401.3.4
EXAMPLE OF SENSITIVITY ANALYSIS REPORT FORMAT

Allowable EUI: 45 kBTU/ft^2		
Predicted EUI: 40 kBTU/ft^2		
INPUT	**EUI (LOW RANGE)**	**EUI (HIGH RANGE)**
Occupant Density	35	42
Lighting Power Density	38	41
Misc. Load Power Density	35	45
Infiltration	38	44
Temperature Setpoints	36	48

The building performance factor (BPF) carbon emissions derived from the modeled building energy use, under nominal conditions, shall be no greater than 1.12 times the BPF listed in Table C407.3(2).

C401.3.5 Energy modeler qualifications. Energy models shall be created only by persons qualified by education and training to perform such work and who have at least two years' experience modeling buildings of similar scale and complexity. The modeling documentation submitted shall be signed either by a licensed professional engineer who is qualified by training and experience to perform energy modeling or by an individual with an active certification from ASHRAE as a Building Energy Modeling Professional (BEMP).

C401.3.6 Demonstration of operating energy use. Metered energy data shall be supplied directly via automated reporting from utilities to the *code official* using Portfolio Manager, and adjusted for the percentage of the *conditioned floor area* intended for occupancy that is occupied during the recording period. While more than 95 percent occupied, the building shall be considered fully occupied. While no less than 85 percent occupied, the building shall operate at or below its assigned building performance factor established in Section C401.3.2 or Item 8 of Section C401.3.1 for any recording period of 12 consecutive months that is completed within three years of the date of the Certificate of Occupancy, as adjusted under this Section C401.3. The owner shall notify the *code official* when this 12-month period has been successfully completed.

C401.3.6.1 Extension of demonstration period. For good cause, including conditions where less than 75 percent of the building is occupied, the *code official* may extend the three-year period for one additional year, but in no case for more than three additional one-year periods. If the building is not at least 75 percent occupied after three additional one-year

periods, the *code official* shall evaluate compliance with Section C401.3.6 based on the most recent one-year period and adjusted for the actual occupancy rate during that period.

C401.3.7 Adjustment for data center energy usage. Where *data center IT energy* usage during the demonstration period, multiplied by a factor of 1.45, is higher than the total *data center* energy use as calculated according to Section C401.3.2, that additional energy shall be added to the total allowable energy use. Where *data center IT energy* use, multiplied by a factor of 1.45, is lower than the total *data center* energy use as calculated according to Section C401.3.2, that shortfall shall be subtracted from the total allowable energy use.

C401.3.8 Adjustment for change in occupancy. When the occupancy of the building or a portion of the building changes from that assumed in the permit submittal, the assigned energy performance target shall be adjusted to reflect the new occupancy. If the new occupancy is not listed in Section C401.3.2, either the *code official* shall assign it an energy use target based on the best-performing local examples of that occupancy type, or a metering system shall be provided that excludes the energy loads for the additional occupancy.

C401.3.9 Adjustment for unusually cold years. If the heating degree days (HDD) recorded by the National Weather Service for the Seattle-Tacoma International Airport exceeds 4885 HDD for the 12-month demonstration period (4 percent above the average 4697 HDD at 65°F base), the assigned energy performance target is permitted to be increased by 1 percent for that period.

C401.3.10 Adjustment for retail operating hours. If the annual number of hours that a retail occupancy is open to the public during the 12-month recording period exceeds the hours assumed in the energy model by more than 4 percent, the annual energy use target for the retail space use only is permitted to be increased by 1 percent for each 4 percent increase in such hours. This claim shall be documented by publicly available published hours of operation.

C401.3.11 Adjustment for commercial kitchens and other large process loads. Where the building includes a commercial kitchen, commercial laundry, hospital central sterile processing facility, or similar large process load, and where *approved* by the *code official*, the energy use of the process equipment and exhaust fans and relief air fans and air tempering associated with the use of that equipment is permitted to be separately sub-metered and subtracted from the overall building energy usage. Energy use of typical HVAC, lighting, and miscellaneous electrical loads within such spaces shall not be included in this adjustment. An *approved* plan shall be submitted with the permit documents detailing how the sub-metered process load energy will be automatically deducted from the total building energy use and the adjusted total reported to the *code official*.

C401.3.12 Financial security. The applicant shall provide a financial security to be used as a penalty for failing to achieve an operating energy use lower than the building's energy use target according to Section C401.3.6. The penalty shall be administered as provided in Section C110, except that the amount of the penalty shall be determined using Table C401.3.13 and not Section C107. The financial security shall be submitted to and *approved* by the *code official* prior to issuance of the building's Certificate of Occupancy. The financial security requirement shall be fulfilled by one of the following methods:

1. An irrevocable letter of credit from a financial institution authorized to do business in Seattle, in an amount equal to $4.00 per square foot of gross *conditioned floor area.*
2. A bond secured by the applicant to ensure compliance with this section, in an amount equal to $4.00 per square foot of gross *conditioned floor area*.
3. A binding pledge that within 3 years of receipt of the Certificate of Occupancy, adjusted as allowed under Section C401.3.6.1, the applicant will comply with the requirements of this section.
    3.1 A binding pledge pursuant to item 3 of this subsection shall be recorded as a covenant in the land records of King County between the applicant and The City of Seattle in a form that is satisfactory to the Seattle City Attorney. The covenant shall bind the applicant and any successors in title to pay any fines levied pursuant to this section. A lien will be placed on the property in cases of non-payment.

If the owner provides evidence that the building has operated at or below its target energy performance level as provided in Section C401.3.6, the financial security provided by the applicant shall be returned to the applicant, or the pledge and covenant shall be released, and the applicant will have no further obligations under this section.

C401.3.13 Procedure for non-compliance. If the owner fails to provide evidence that the building has operated as required under Section C401.3.6, the *code official* shall, as applicable, either:

1. Draw down on a financial security provided in the form of an irrevocable letter of credit or a bond, in whole, or in part, or
2. Levy a fine against an applicant that provided a financial security in the form of a binding pledge as set forth in Section C401.3.12(3). The fine shall be issued as a civil penalty.

The amount of the fine levied or the amount drawn down from a financial security shall be determined according to Table C401.3.13.

C401.3.14 Reimbursements. Where a financial security has been drawn down pursuant to item 1 in Section C401.3.13, or a fine has been levied pursuant to item 2 in Section C401.3.13, the *code official* shall reimburse the owner for documented

expenses incurred to lower the operating energy use of the building, including commissioning, repairs or improvements to the existing energy-consuming systems, or provision of additional energy efficiency measures, up to the maximum reimbursement amounts listed in Table C401.3.13. Such expenditures shall be *approved* in advance by the *code official*, and the work shall be fully completed within one year of the date when a financial security has been drawn down pursuant to item 1 in Section C401.3.13, or a fine has been levied pursuant to item 2 in Section C401.3.13.

TABLE C401.3.13
FINANCIAL SECURITY AND ENERGY EFFICIENCY REIMBURSEMENTS

Energy use exceeding target	Amount of fine or draw-down from financial security, per square foot of gross conditioned floor area	Maximum reimbursement per square foot of gross conditioned floor area for work *approved* under Section C401.3.12
Less than 10%	$1.00	$0.50
10% to less than 20%	$2.00	$1.00
20% to less than 30%	$3.00	$1.50
30% or greater	$4.00	$2.00

SECTION C402
BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS

C402.1 General. Building thermal envelope assemblies for buildings that are intended to comply with the code on a prescriptive basis, in accordance with the compliance path described in Item 1 of Section C401.2, shall comply with the following:

1. The opaque portions of the building thermal envelope shall comply with the specific insulation requirements of Section C402.2 and the thermal requirements of either the *R*-value based method of Section C402.1.3, the U-, C- and F-factor based method of Section C402.1.4, or the component performance alternative of Section C402.1.5.
2. Fenestration in the building envelope assemblies shall comply with Section C402.4, or the component performance alternative of Section C402.1.5.
3. Air leakage of building envelope assemblies shall comply with Section C402.5.

SDCI Informative Note: For the application of the building envelope requirements to elevator shafts and stair enclosures, see the definition of *conditioned space* in Chapter 2 and the exception to Section C402.1.3.

C402.1.1 Low energy buildings, semi-heated buildings and greenhouses. Low energy buildings shall comply with Section C402.1.1.1. Semi-heated buildings and spaces shall comply with Section C402.1.1.2, Greenhouses shall comply with Section C402.1.1.3.

C402.1.1.1 Low energy buildings. The following buildings, or portions thereof, separated from the remainder of the building by *building thermal envelope* assemblies complying with this code shall be exempt from all thermal envelope provisions of this code:

1. Those that are heated and/or cooled with a peak design rate of energy usage less than 3.4 Btu/h × ft^2 (10.7 W/m^2) or 1.0 watt/ft^2 (10.7 W/m^2) of floor area for space conditioning purposes.
2. Those that do not contain conditioned space.
3. Unstaffed equipment shelters or cabinets used solely for personal wireless service facilities.

C402.1.1.2 Semi-heated buildings and spaces. The building envelope of *semi-heated* buildings, or portions thereof, shall comply with the same requirements as that for conditioned spaces in Section C402, except as modified by this section. The total installed output capacity of mechanical space conditioning systems serving a *semi-heated* building or space shall comply with Section C202, except as modified by this section. Building envelope assemblies separating conditioned space from semi-heated space shall comply with the exterior envelope insulation requirements. Semi-heated spaces heated by mechanical systems that do not include electric resistance heating equipment are not required to comply with the opaque wall insulation provisions of Section C402.2.3 for walls that separate semi-heated spaces from the exterior or low energy spaces. Fenestration that forms part of the *building thermal envelope* enclosing semi-heated spaces shall comply with Section C402.4. Semi-heated spaces shall be calculated separately from other conditioned spaces for compliance purposes.

Opaque walls in semi-heated spaces shall be calculated as fully code compliant opaque walls for both the target and proposed for the Target UA calculations for the component performance alternative in Section C402.1.5, and for the ((~~Standard Reference~~)) Baseline Building Design for Total Building Performance compliance per Section C407. The capacity of heat trace temperature maintenance systems complying with Section C404.7.2 that are provided for freeze protection of piping and equipment only, shall not be included in the total installed output capacity of mechanical space conditioning systems.

Exception: Building or space may comply as *semi-heated* when served by ((~~one or more of~~)) the following system ((~~alternatives~~)) alternative:

1. Electric infrared heating equipment for localized heating applications, but not for general area heating, insulated in compliance with Section C402.2.8 and controlled by occupant sensing devices in compliance with Section C403.11.1.

((~~2. Heat pumps with cooling capacity permanently disabled, as pre-approved by the jurisdiction.~~))

SDCI Informative Note: There is no separate "freeze protection" space conditioning category for unoccupied utility buildings. Spaces with no cooling and less than 3.4 BTU/h-ft^2 heating capacity are not required to be insulated. The opaque walls of spaces that meet the definition of "semiheated" in Chapter 2 are not required to be insulated, but otherwise the thermal envelope of semiheated spaces must meet all requirements for *conditioned space*. Spaces with any mechanical cooling or with more than 8 BTU/h-ft^2 heating capacity must meet all the *building thermal envelope* requirements for *conditioned space*.

C402.1.1.3 Greenhouses. *Greenhouse* structures or areas that comply with all of the following shall be exempt from the building envelope requirements of this code:

1. Exterior opaque envelope assemblies complying with Sections C402.2 and C402.4.4.

   Exception: Low energy greenhouses that comply with Section C402.1.1.1.

2. Interior partition *building thermal envelope* assemblies that separate the *greenhouse* from conditioned space complying with Sections C402.2, C402.4.3 and C402.4.4.
3. Non-opaque envelope assemblies complying with the thermal envelope requirements in Table C402.1.1.3. The U-factor for the non-opaque roof shall be for the roof assembly or a roof that includes the assembly and an internal curtain system.

   Exception: Unheated greenhouses.

4. No mechanical cooling is provided.
5. For heated greenhouses, heating is provided by a radiant heating system, a condensing natural gas-fired or condensing propane-fired heating system, or a heat pump with cooling capacity permanently disabled as pre-approved by the jurisdiction.

TABLE C402.1.1.3
NON-OPAQUE THERMAL ENVELOPE MAXIMUM REQUIREMENTS

COMPONENT *U*-FACTOR BTU/H-FT^2-°F	CLIMATE ZONE 5 AND MARINE 4
Non-opaque roof	0.5
Non-opaque SEW wall	0.7
Non-opaque N wall	0.6

C402.1.2 Equipment buildings. Buildings that comply with all of the following shall be exempt from the building thermal envelope provisions of this code:

1. Are separate buildings with floor area no more than 500 square feet (50 m^2).
2. Are intended to house electronic equipment with installed equipment power totaling at least 7 watts per square foot (75 W/m^2) and not intended for human occupancy.
3. Are served by mechanical cooling and heating systems sized in accordance with Sections C403.1.2 and C403.3.1.
4. Have a heating system capacity not greater than 17,000 Btu/hr (5 kW) and a heating thermostat set point that is restricted to not more than 50°F (10°C).
5. Have an average wall and roof *U*-factor less than 0.200.

   Exception: Where the cooling and heating system is a heat pump, the heating system capacity is allowed to exceed 17,000 Btu/h provided the heat pump cooling efficiency is at least 15 percent better than the requirements in Table C403.3.2(2).

C402.1.2.1 Standalone elevator hoistways. Elevator hoistways that comply with all of the following shall be exempt from the building thermal envelope and envelope air barrier provisions of this code:

1. Are separate from any other conditioned spaces in the building (do not serve or open into any conditioned, semiheated or indirectly conditioned space).
2. Have heating and/or cooling equipment sized only to serve the expected elevator loads with thermostat set points restricted to heating to no higher than 40° F and cooling to no lower than 95° F.
3. Have an area-weighted average wall, roof, and floor (where applicable) U-factor of less than or equal to 0.20. Calculations must include any floor-slab-edges that penetrate the hoistway and thus are considered part of the above-grade walls.

C402.1.3 Insulation component *R*-value method. *Building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies shall comply with the requirements of Section C402.2 based on the climate zone specified in Chapter 3. For opaque portions of the building thermal envelope intended to comply on an insulation component *R*-value basis, the *R*-values for insulation shall not be less than that specified in Table C402.1.3. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing Group R occupancies shall use the *R*-values from the "Group R" column of Table C402.1.3. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing occupancies other than Group R shall use the *R*-values from the "All other" column of Table C402.1.3.

Exception: For stair and elevator shafts that do not comply with Section C402.1.2.1 and that are located within enclosed garages or other enclosed non-conditioned spaces and without conditioned supply air or cooling or heating appliances rated higher than 2 kW in any shaft, walls enclosing the shafts are permitted to be:

1. Concrete or masonry with minimum R-5 *continuous insulation;*
2. Metal studs with R-15 *cavity insulation* and without *continuous insulation;* or
3. Other assemblies with a maximum *U*-value of 0.120.

Slab floors, intermediate mass floor edges and elevator pits within shafts using this exception are excluded from envelope insulation requirements. Shaft surfaces using this exception shall not be included in the gross exterior wall area for purposes of maximum fenestration area calculations in Section C402.4.1 component performance calculations in Section C402.1.5, or for the total building performance calculation of Section C407.

TABLE C402.1.3
OPAQUE THERMAL ENVELOPE INSULATION COMPONENT MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS, *R*-VALUE METHOD[a, i]

CLIMATE ZONE	5 AND MARINE 4	
	All Other	Group R
Roofs		
Insulation entirely above deck	R-38 ci	R-38 ci
Metal buildings[b]	R-25 + ((~~R-11~~)) R-22 LS	R-25 + ((~~R-11~~)) R-22 LS
Attic and other	R-49	R-49
Walls, Above Grade		
Mass[h]	((~~R-9.5[e] ci~~)) Exterior: R-16 ci Interior: R-13 + R-6 ci wood stud, or R-13 + R-10 ci metal stud	((~~R-13.3 ci~~)) Exterior: R-16 ci Interior: R-13 + R-6 ci wood stud, or R-13 + R-10 ci metal stud
Mass transfer deck slab edge	((~~R-5~~)) N/R	((~~R-5~~)) N/R
Metal building	R-19 ci or R-13 + 13 ci	R-19 ci or R-13 + 13 ci
Steel framed	R-13 + R-10 ci	R-19 + R-8.5 ci
Wood framed and other	((~~R-21 int or R-15 + 5 ci std~~)) R-13 + R-7.5 ci	R-13 + 7.5 ci std or R-20 + 3.8 ci std or R-25 std
Walls, Below Grade		
Below-grade wall[d, h]	((~~Same as above grade~~)) Exterior: R-10 ci Interior: R-19 wood stud, or R-13 + R-6 ci metal stud	((~~Same as above grade~~)) Exterior: R-10 ci Interior: R-19 wood stud, or R-13 + R-6 ci metal stud
Floors		
Mass[f]	R-30 ci	R-30 ci
Joist/framing	((~~R-30[e]~~)) Steel frame: R-38 + R-10 ci Wood frame: R-38	((~~R-30[e]~~)) Steel frame: R-38 + R-10 ci Wood frame: R-38
Slab-on-Grade Floors		
Unheated slabs	R-10 for 24" below	R-10 for 24" below
Heated slabs[d]	R-10 perimeter & under entire slab	R-10 perimeter & under entire slab
Opaque Doors[g]		
Swinging	U-0.37	U-0.37
Nonswinging	R-4.75	R-4.75

Keys for Table C402.1.3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm. ci = Continuous insulation. NR = No requirement. LS = Liner system

Footnotes for Table C402.1.3

a. Assembly descriptions can be found in Chapter 2 and Appendix A.

b. Where using *R*-value compliance method, a thermal spacer block with minimum thickness of 1/2 inch and minimum *R*-value of R-3.5 shall be provided, otherwise use the *U*-factor compliance method in Table C402.1.4.

c. (Reserved) ((~~Exception: Integral insulated concrete block walls complying with ASTM C90 with all cores filled and meeting both of the following:~~

   1. ~~At least 50 percent of cores must be filled with vermiculite or equivalent fill insulation; and~~
   2. ~~The building thermal envelope encloses one or more of the following uses: Warehouse (storage and retail), gymnasium, auditorium, church chapel, arena, kennel, manufacturing plant, indoor swimming pool, pump station, water and waste water treatment facility, storage facility, storage area, motor vehicle service facility. Where additional uses not listed (such as office, retail, etc.) are contained within the building, the exterior walls that enclose these areas may not utilize this exception and must comply with the appropriate mass wall *R*-value from Table C402.1.3/U-factor from Table C402.1.4.~~))

d. Where heated slabs are below grade, they shall comply with the insulation requirements for heated slabs.

e. (Reserved) ((~~Steel floor joist systems shall be insulated to R-38 + R-10ci.~~))

f. "Mass floors" shall include floors weighing not less than:

   1. 35 pounds per square foot of floor surface area; or
   2. 25 pounds per square foot of floor surface area where the material weight is not more than 120 pounds per cubic foot.

g. Not applicable to garage doors. See Table C402.1.4.

h. Peripheral edges of intermediate concrete floors are included in the above grade mass wall category and therefore must be insulated as above grade mass walls unless they meet the definition of Mass Transfer Deck Slab Edge. The area of the peripheral edges of concrete floors shall be defined as the thickness of the slab multiplied by the perimeter length of the edge condition. See Table A103.3.7.2 for typical default u-factors for above grade slab edges and footnote c for typical conditions of above grade slab edges.

i. Where the total area of through-wall mechanical equipment is greater than 1 percent of the opaque *above-grade wall* area, use of the *R*-value method is not permitted. See Section C402.1.4.2.

((~~i~~)) j. For roof, wall or floor assemblies where the proposed assembly would not be continuous insulation, ((~~an~~)) alternate nominal *R*-value compliance options for assemblies with isolated metal ((~~penetrations of~~)) fasteners that penetrate otherwise continuous insulation ((~~is~~)) are as shown in Columns B and C of Table C402.1.3(i):

TABLE C402.1.3(j)
CONTINUOUS INSULATION EQUIVALENTS

Column A Assemblies with continuous insulation (see definition)	Column B Alternate option for assemblies with metal penetrations, greater than 0.04% but less than 0.08%	Column C Alternate option for assemblies with metal penetrations, greater than or equal to 0.08% but less than 0.12%
R-9.5ci	R-11.9ci	R-13ci
R-11.4ci	R-14.3ci	R-15.7ci
R-13.3ci	R-16.6ci	R-18.3ci
R-15.2ci	R-19.0ci	R-21ci
R-30ci	R-38ci	R-42ci
R-38ci	R-48ci	R-53ci
R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-9.4ci	R-13 + R-10.3ci
R-13 + R-10ci	R-13 + R-12.5ci	R-13 + R-13.8ci
R-13 + R-12.5ci	R-13 + R-15.6ci	R-13 + R-17.2ci
R-13 + R-13ci	R-13 + R-16.3ci	R-13 + R-17.9ci
R-19 + R-8.5ci	R-19 + R-10.6ci	R-19 + R-11.7ci
R-19 + R-14ci	R-19 + R-17.5ci	R-19 + R-19.2ci
R-19 + R-16ci	R-19 + R-20ci	R-19 + R-22ci
R-20 + R-3.8ci	R-20 + R-4.8ci	R-20 + R-5.3ci
R-21 + R-5ci	R-21 + R-6.3ci	R-21 + R-6.9ci

Footnotes for Table C402.1.3(j)

((~~This~~)) These alternate nominal *R*-value compliance options ((~~is~~)) are allowed for projects complying with all of the following:

1. The ratio of the cross-sectional area, as measured in the plane of the surface, of metal penetrations of otherwise continuous insulation to the opaque surface area of the assembly is greater than 0.0004 (0.04%), but less than 0.0008 (0.08%), for use of Column B equivalents, and greater than or equal to 0.0008 (0.08%), but less than 0.0012 (0.12%), for use of Column C equivalents.
   a. Where all metal penetrations are stainless steel, Column B is permitted to be used for penetrations greater than 0.12% but less than 0.24% of opaque surface area, and Column C is permitted to be used for penetrations greater than or equal to 0.24% but less than 0.48% of opaque surface area.
2. The metal penetrations of otherwise continuous insulation are isolated or discontinuous (e.g., brick ties or other discontinuous metal attachments, offset brackets supporting shelf angles that allow insulation to go between the shelf angle and the primary portions of the wall structure). No continuous metal elements (e.g., metal studs, z-girts, z-channels, shelf angles) penetrate the otherwise continuous portion of the insulation.
3. Building permit drawings shall contain details showing the locations and dimensions of all the metal penetrations (e.g., brick ties or other discontinuous metal attachments, offset brackets, etc.) of otherwise continuous insulation. In addition, calculations shall be provided showing the ratio of the cross-sectional area of metal penetrations of otherwise continuous insulation to the overall opaque wall area.

For other cases where the proposed assembly is not continuous insulation, see Section C402.1.4 for determination of U-factors for assemblies that include metal other than screws and nails.

C402.1.4 Assembly *U*-factor, *C*-factor or *F*-factor based method. *Building thermal envelope* opaque assemblies shall meet the requirements of Section C402.2 based on the climate zone specified in Chapter 3. Building thermal envelope opaque assemblies intended to comply on an assembly *U*-, *C*-, or *F*-factor basis shall have a U-, C-, or F-factor not greater than that

specified in Table C402.1.4. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing Group R occupancies shall use the *U*-, *C*-, or *F*-factor from the "Group R" column of Table C402.1.4. Commercial buildings or portions of commercial buildings enclosing occupancies other than Group R shall use the *U*-, *C*-, or *F*-factor from the "All Other" column of Table C402.1.4. The *U*-factors for typical construction assemblies are included in Appendix A. These values shall be used for all calculations. Where proposed construction assemblies are not represented in Appendix A, values shall be calculated in accordance with the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals* using the framing factors listed in Appendix A where applicable and shall include the thermal bridging effects of framing materials.

C402.1.4.1 Thermal resistance of cold-formed steel stud walls. *U*-factors of walls with cold-formed steel studs shall be permitted to be determined either by using the values in Table C402.1.4.1, or in accordance with Equation 4-1:

$$U = 1/[R_s + (ER)] \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-1)}$$

where:

R_s = The cumulative *R*-value of the wall components along the path of heat transfer, excluding the cavity insulation and steel studs.

ER = The effective *R*-value of the cavity insulation with steel studs.

C402.1.4.2 Thermal resistance of mechanical equipment penetrations. When the total area of penetrations from through-wall mechanical equipment or equipment listed in Table C403.3.2(3) exceeds 1 percent of the opaque *above-grade wall* area, the mechanical equipment penetration area shall be calculated as a separate wall assembly with a default U-factor of 0.5. Mechanical system ducts and louvers, including those for supply, exhaust and relief, and for condenser air intake and outlet, are not considered to be mechanical equipment for the purposes of this section.

Exception: Where mechanical equipment has been tested in accordance with approved testing standards, the mechanical equipment penetration area is permitted to be calculated as a separate wall assembly using the U-factor determined by such test.

TABLE C402.1.4
OPAQUE THERMAL ENVELOPE ASSEMBLY MAXIMUM REQUIREMENTS, *U*-FACTOR METHOD[a, f]

	CLIMATE ZONE 5 AND MARINE 4	
	All Other	**Group R**
Roofs		
Insulation entirely above deck	U-0.027	U-0.027
Metal buildings	((~~U-0.031~~)) U-0.027	((~~U-0.031~~)) U-0.027
Attic and other	U-0.021	U-0.021
Joist or single rafter	U-0.027	U-0.027
Walls, Above Grade		
Mass[g, k]	((~~U-0.104~~[d])) U-0.057	((~~U-0.078~~)) U-0.057
Mass transfer deck slab edge[j]	U-0.20	U-0.20
Slab penetrating thermal envelope wall[h]	U-0.10	U-0.10
Metal building[k]	U-0.052	U-0.052
Steel framed[k]	U-0.055	U-0.055
Wood framed and other[k]	((~~U-0.054~~)) U-0.051	U-0.051
Walls, Below Grade		
Below-grade wall[b, g]	((~~Same as above grade~~)) U-0.070	((~~Same as above grade~~)) U-0.070
Floors		
Mass[e]	U-0.031	U-0.031
Joist/framing	U-0.029 steel joist U-0.025 wood joist	U-0.029 steel joist U-0.025 wood joist
Concrete column or concrete wall penetrating thermal envelope floor[i]	U-0.55	U-0.55
Concrete slab floor directly above an electrical utility vault	N.R.	N.R.
Slab-on-Grade Floors		
Unheated slabs	F-0.54	F-0.54
Heated slabs[c]	F-0.55	F-0.55
Opaque Doors		
Swinging door	U-0.37	U-0.37
Nonswinging door	U-0.34	U-0.34
Garage door <14% glazing	U-0.31	U-0.31

Footnotes for Table C402.1.4

a. Use of opaque assembly *U*-factors, *C*-factors, and *F*-factors from Appendix A is required unless otherwise allowed by Section C402.1.4.

b. (Reserved) ((~~Where heated slabs are below grade, they shall comply with the *F*-factor requirements for heated slabs.~~))

c. Heated slab *F*-factors shall be determined specifically for heated slabs. Unheated slab factors shall not be used.

d. (Reserved) ((~~Exception: Integral insulated concrete block walls complying with ASTM C90 with all cores filled and meeting both of the following:~~
   1. ~~At least 50 percent of cores must be filled with vermiculite or equivalent fill insulation; and~~
   2. ~~The building thermal envelope encloses one or more of the following uses: Warehouse (storage and retail), gymnasium, auditorium, church chapel, arena, kennel, manufacturing plant, indoor swimming pool, pump station, water and waste water treatment facility, storage facility, storage area, motor vehicle service facility. Where additional uses not listed (such as office, retail, etc.) are contained within the building, the exterior walls that enclose these areas may not utilize this exception and must comply with the appropriate mass wall *R*-value from Table C402.1.3/U-factor from Table C402.1.4.~~))

e. "Mass floors" shall include floors weighing not less than:
   1. 35 pounds per square foot of floor surface area; or
   2. 25 pounds per square foot of floor surface area where the material weight is not more than 120 pounds per cubic foot.

f. Opaque assembly U-factors based on designs tested in accordance with ASTM C1363 shall be permitted. The *R*-value of continuous insulation shall be permitted to be added or subtracted from the original test design.

g. Peripheral edges of intermediate concrete floors are included in the above grade mass wall category and therefore must be insulated as above grade mass walls unless they meet the definition of Mass Transfer Deck Slab Edge. The area of the peripheral edges of concrete floors shall be defined as the thickness of the slab multiplied by the perimeter length of the edge condition. See Table A103.3.7.2 for typical default u-factors for above grade slab edges and footnote c for typical conditions of above grade slab edges.

h. Intermediate concrete floor slabs penetrating the *building thermal envelope* shall comply with Section C402.2.9. The area of such penetrating concrete floor slabs shall be defined as the thickness of the slab multiplied by the length of the penetration. The "exposed concrete" row in Table A103.3.7.2 shall be used for typical default *U*-factors for the penetrating concrete slab.

i. Value applies to concrete columns and concrete walls that interrupt mass floor insulation, but not to perimeter walls or columns separating interior *conditioned* space from exterior space.

j. A mass transfer deck, due to its configuration, is not insulated. The table value (U-0.20) shall be used as the baseline value for component performance, total building performance, or target performance path calculations. For the proposed value, the appropriate value from the top line of Table A104.3.7.2 shall be used.

k. Through-wall mechanical equipment subject to Section C402.1.4.2 shall be calculated at the *U*-factor defined in Section C402.1.4.2. The area-weighted *U*-factor of the wall, including through-wall mechanical equipment, shall not exceed the value in the table.

TABLE C402.1.4.1
EFFECTIVE *R*-VALUES FOR STEEL STUD WALL ASSEMBLIES

NOMINAL STUD DEPTH (inches)	SPACING OF FRAMING (inches)	CAVITY *R*-VALUE (insulation)	CORRECTION FACTOR (F_c)	EFFECTIVE *R*-VALUE (ER) (Cavity *R*-Value × F_c)
3-1/2	16	13	0.46	5.98
		15	0.43	6.45
3-1/2	24	13	0.55	7.15
		15	0.52	7.80
6	16	19	0.37	7.03
		21	0.35	7.35
6	24	19	0.45	8.55
		21	0.43	9.03
8	16	25	0.31	7.75
	24	25	0.38	9.50

C402.1.5 Component performance alternative. Building envelope values and fenestration areas determined in accordance with Equation 4-2 shall be permitted in lieu of compliance with the *U*-factors and *F*-factors in Table C402.1.4 and C402.4 and the maximum allowable fenestration areas in Section C402.4.1.

For buildings with more than one *space conditioning category*, component performance compliance shall be demonstrated separately for each space conditioning category. Interior partition ceilings, walls, fenestration and floors that separate space conditioning areas shall be applied to the component performance calculations for the space conditioning category with the highest level of space conditioning.

Proposed Total UA ≤ Allowable Total UA **(Equation 4-2)**

Where:

Proposed Total UA = UA-glaz-prop + UA sky-prop + UA-opaque-prop + FL-slab-prop

Allowable Total UA = UA-glaz-allow + UA-glaz-excess + UA sky-allow + UA-sky-excess + UA-opaque-allow + FL-slab-allow

UA-glaz-prop = Sum of (proposed *U*-value × proposed area) for each distinct vertical fenestration type, up to code maximum area

UA-sky-prop = Sum of (proposed *U*-value × proposed area) for each distinct skylight type, up to the code maximum area

UA-opaque-prop = Sum of (proposed *U*-value × proposed area) for each distinct opaque thermal envelope type

FL-slab-prop = Sum of (proposed *F*-value × proposed length) for each distinct slab on grade perimeter assembly

UA-glaz-allow = Sum of (code maximum vertical fenestration *U*-value from Table C402.4, or Section C402.4.1.1.2 if applicable, × proposed area) for each distinct vertical fenestration type, not to exceed the code maximum area[1]

UA-glaz-excess = *U*-value for the proposed wall type from Table ((~~C402.4~~[2])) C402.1.4[2] × vertical fenestration area in excess of the code maximum area

UA-sky-allow = Sum of (code maximum skylight *U*-value from Table C402.4 × proposed area) for each distinct skylight type proposed, not to exceed the code maximum area

UA-sky-excess = *U*-value for the proposed roof type from Table C402.4[3] × skylight area in excess of the code maximum area

UA-opaque-allow = Code maximum opaque envelope *U*-value from Table C402.1.4 for each opaque door, wall, roof, and floor assembly × proposed area

FL-slab-allow = Code maximum *F*-value for each slab-on-grade perimeter assembly × proposed length

Notes

1. Where multiple vertical fenestration types are proposed and the code maximum area is exceeded, the *U*-value shall be the average Table C402.1.4 *U*-value weighted by the proposed vertical fenestration area of each type.
2. Where multiple wall types are proposed the *U*-value shall be the average Table C402.1.4 *U*-value weighted by the proposed above grade wall area of each type.

3. Where multiple roof types are proposed the *U*-value shall be the average Table C402.1.4 *U*-value weighted by the proposed roof area of each type.

C402.1.5.1 Component *U*-factors and F-factors. The *U*-factors and *F*-factors for typical construction assemblies are included in Chapter 3 and Appendix A. These values shall be used for all calculations. Where proposed construction assemblies are not represented in Chapter 3 or Appendix A, values shall be calculated in accordance with the ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals*, using the framing factors listed in Appendix A.

For envelope assemblies containing metal framing, the *U*-factor shall be determined by one of the following methods:

1. Results of laboratory measurements according to acceptable methods of test.
2. ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals* where the metal framing is bonded on one or both sides to a metal skin or covering.
3. The zone method as provided in ASHRAE *Handbook of Fundamentals.*
4. Effective framing/cavity *R*-values as provided in Appendix A. When return air ceiling plenums are employed, the roof/ceiling assembly shall:
    a. For thermal transmittance purposes, not include the ceiling proper nor the plenum space as part of the assembly; and
    b. For gross area purposes, be based upon the interior face of the upper plenum surface.
5. Tables in ASHRAE 90.1 Normative Appendix A.
6. Calculation method for steel-framed walls in accordance with Section C402.1.4.1 and Table C402.1.4.1.

C402.1.5.2 SHGC rate calculations. Fenestration SHGC values for individual components and/or fenestration are permitted to exceed the SHGC values in Table C402.4 and/or the maximum allowable fenestration areas in Section C402.4.1 where the proposed total SHGC×A is less than the allowable total SHGC×A as determined by Equation 4-3.

Proposed Total SHGC×A ≤ Allowable Total SHGC×A **(Equation 4-3)**

Where:

Proposed Total SHGC×A	=	SHGC×A-glaz-prop + SHGC×A sky-prop
Allowable Total SHGC×A	=	SHGC×A-glaz-allow + SHGC×A-sky-allow
SHGC×A-glaz-prop	=	Sum of (proposed SHGC × proposed area) for each distinct vertical fenestration type
SHGC×A-sky-prop	=	Sum of (proposed SHGC x proposed area) for each distinct skylight type
SHGC×A-glaz-allow	=	Sum of (code maximum vertical fenestration SHGC from Table C402.4, or Section C402.4.1.3 if applicable, × proposed area) for each distinct vertical fenestration type, not to exceed the code maximum area
SHGC×A-sky-allow	=	Sum of (code maximum skylight SHGC from Table C402.4 × proposed area) for each distinct skylight type, not to exceed the code maximum area

If the proposed vertical fenestration area does not exceed the Vertical Fenestration Area allowed, the target area for each vertical fenestration type shall equal the proposed area. If the proposed vertical fenestration area exceeds the Vertical Fenestration Area allowed, the target area of each vertical fenestration element shall be reduced in the base envelope design by the same percentage and the net area of each above-grade wall type increased proportionately by the same percentage so that the total vertical fenestration area is exactly equal to the Vertical Fenestration Area allowed.

If the proposed skylight area does not exceed the Allowable Skylight Area from Section C402.4.1, the target area shall equal the proposed area. If the proposed skylight area exceeds the Allowable Skylight Area from Section C402.4.1, the area of each skylight element shall be reduced in the base envelope design by the same percentage and the net area of each roof type increased proportionately by the same percentage so that the total skylight area is exactly equal to the allowed percentage per Section C402.3.1 of the gross roof area.

C402.2 Specific building thermal envelope insulation requirements. Insulation in building thermal envelope opaque assemblies shall comply with Sections C402.2.1 through ((~~C402.2.6~~)) C402.2.10 and Table C402.1.3.

Where this section refers to installing insulation levels as specified in Section C402.1.3, assemblies complying with Section ((~~C402.1.5~~)) C402.1.4 and buildings complying with Section C402.1.5 are allowed to install alternate levels of insulation so long as the U-factor of the insulated assembly is less than or equal to the U-factor required by the respective path.

C402.2.1 Roof assembly. The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of the insulating material installed either between the roof framing or continuously on the roof assembly shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3, based on construction materials used in the roof assembly. Continuous insulation board shall be installed in not less than 2 layers and the edge joints between

each layer of insulation shall be staggered. Insulation installed on a suspended ceiling with removable ceiling tiles shall not be considered part of the minimum thermal resistance of the roof insulation.

Exceptions:

1. Continuously insulated roof assemblies where the thickness of insulation varies 1 inch (25 mm) or less and where the area-weighted *U*-factor is equivalent to the same assembly with the *R*-value specified in Table C402.1.3.
2. (Reserved) ((~~Where tapered insulation is used with insulation entirely above deck, those roof assemblies shall show compliance on a *U*-factor basis per Section C402.1.4. The effective *U*-factor shall be determined through the use of Tables A102.2.6(1), A102.2.6(2) and A102.2.6(3).~~))
3. Two layers of insulation are not required where insulation tapers to the roof deck, such as at roof drains. At roof drains, the immediate 24" × 24" plan area around each roof drain has a minimum insulation requirement of R-13, but otherwise is permitted to be excluded from roof insulation area-weighted calculations.

C402.2.1.1 Skylight curbs. Skylight curbs shall be insulated to the level of roofs with insulation entirely above deck or R-5, whichever is less.

Exception: Unit skylight curbs included as a component of skylight listed and labeled in accordance with NFRC 100 shall not be required to be insulated.

C402.2.1.2 Rooftop HVAC equipment curbs. Structural curbs installed to support rooftop HVAC equipment are allowed to interrupt the above roof insulation. The area under the HVAC equipment inside of the equipment curb shall be insulated to a minimum of R-13 in all locations where there are not roof openings for ductwork. The annular space between the roof opening and the ductwork shall be sealed to maintain the building air barrier. The plan-view area of the HVAC equipment curb shall be excluded from the prescriptive roof insulation requirements or the area-weighted component performance calculations.

C402.2.2 Reserved.

C402.2.3 Above-grade walls. The minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of materials installed in the wall cavity between the framing members and continuously on the walls shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3, based on framing type and construction materials used in the wall assembly. The *R*-value of integral insulation installed in concrete masonry units (CMU) shall not be used in determining compliance with Table C402.1.3 except as otherwise noted in the table. In determining compliance with Table C402.1.4, the use of the U-factor of concrete masonry units with integral insulation shall be permitted.

"Mass walls" where used as a component in the thermal envelope of a building shall comply with one of the following:

1. Weigh not less than 35 psf (170 kg/m^2) of wall surface area.
2. Weigh not less than 25 psf (120 kg/m^2) of wall surface area where the material weight is not more than 120 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (1,900 kg/m3).
3. Have a heat capacity exceeding 7 Btu/ft^2 × °F (144 kJ/m^2 × K).
4. Have a heat capacity exceeding 5 Btu/ft^2 x° F (103 kJ/m^2 × K) where the material weight is not more than 120 pcf (1900 kg/m^3).

C402.2.4 Below-grade walls. The *R*-value of the insulating material installed in, or continuously on, the below-grade walls shall be in accordance with Table C402.1.3. The U-factor or *R*-value required shall extend to the level of the lowest floor of the conditioned space enclosed by the below-grade wall.

C402.2.5 Floors. The thermal properties (component *R*-values or assembly *U*- or *F*-factors) of floor assemblies over outdoor air or unconditioned space shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3 or C402.1.4 based on the construction materials used in the floor assembly. Floor framing cavity insulation or structural slab insulation shall be installed to maintain permanent contact with the underside of the subfloor decking or structural slabs.

"Mass floors" where used as a component of the thermal envelope of a building shall provide one of the following weights:

1. 35 pounds per square foot of floor surface area.
2. 25 pounds per square foot of floor surface area where the material weight is not more than 120 pounds per cubic foot.

Exceptions:

1. The floor framing cavity insulation or structural slab insulation shall be permitted to be in contact with the top side of sheathing or continuous insulation installed on the bottom side of floor assemblies where combined with insulation that meets or exceeds the minimum *R*-value in Table C402.1.3 for "Metal framed" or "Wood framed and other" values for "Walls, Above Grade" and extends from the bottom of the top of all perimeter floor framing or floor assembly members.
2. Insulation applied to the underside of concrete floor slabs shall be permitted an air space of not more than 1 inch where it turns up and is in contact with the underside of the floor under walls associated with the *building thermal envelope.*

C402.2.6 Slabs-on-grade perimeter insulation. Where the slab-on-grade is in contact with the ground, the minimum thermal resistance (*R*-value) of the insulation around the perimeter of unheated or heated slab-on-grade floors designed in accordance with the *R*-value method of Section C402.1.3 shall be as specified in Table C402.1.3. The insulation shall be placed on the outside of the foundation or on the inside of the foundation wall. The insulation shall extend downward from the top of the slab for a minimum distance as shown in the table or to the top of the footing, whichever is less, or downward to at least the bottom of the slab and then horizontally to the interior or exterior for the total distance shown in the table. Insulation extending away from the building shall be protected by pavement or by a minimum of 10 inches (254 mm) of soil. Insulation complying with Table C402.1.3 shall be provided under the entire area of heated slabs-on-grade.

Exception: Where the slab-on-grade floor is greater than 24 inches (61 mm) below the finished exterior grade, perimeter insulation is not required.

C402.2.7 Airspaces. Where the thermal properties of airspaces are used to comply with this code in accordance with Section C401.2, such airspaces shall be enclosed in an unventilated cavity constructed to minimize airflow into and out of the enclosed airspace. Airflow shall be deemed minimized where the enclosed airspace is located on the interior side of the continuous air barrier and is bounded on all sides by building components.

Exception: The thermal resistance of airspaces located on the exterior side of the continuous air barrier and adjacent to and behind the exterior wall covering material shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C1363 modified with an airflow entering the bottom and exiting the top of the airspace at a minimum air movement rate of not less than 70 mm/sec.

C402.2.8 Insulation of radiant heating systems. *Radiant heating system* panels and their associated components that are installed in interior or exterior assemblies shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-3.5 on all surfaces not facing the space being heated. Radiant heating system panels that are installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be separated from the exterior of the building or unconditioned or exempt spaces by not less than the *R*-value of the insulation installed in the opaque assembly in which they are installed or the assembly shall comply with Section C402.1.4.

Exception: Heated slabs-on-grade insulated in accordance with Section C402.2.6.

C402.2.9 Above-grade exterior concrete slabs. Above-grade concrete slabs that penetrate the *building thermal envelope*, including but not limited to decks and balconies, shall each include a minimum R-10 thermal break, aligned with the primary insulating layer in the adjoining wall assemblies. Stainless steel (but not carbon steel) reinforcing bars are permitted to penetrate the thermal break. If the Total Building Performance path, the Target Performance Path, or the component performance alternative in Section C402.1.5 is utilized and the thermal break required by this section is not provided where concrete slabs penetrate the *building thermal envelope*, the sectional area of the penetration shall be assigned the default *U*-factors from the "exposed concrete" row of Table A103.3.7.2.

Exception: *Mass transfer deck slab* edges.

C402.2.10 Vertical fenestration intersection with opaque walls. *Vertical fenestration* shall comply with items 1, 2 and 3, as applicable:

1. Where wall assemblies include *continuous insulation*, the exterior glazing layer of *vertical fenestration* and any required thermal break in the frame shall each be aligned within 2 inches laterally of either face of the *continuous insulation* layer.
2. Where wall assemblies do not include *continuous insulation*, the exterior glazing layer of *vertical fenestration* and any required thermal break in the frame shall each be aligned within the thickness of the *wall* insulation layer and not more than 2 inches laterally from the exterior face of the outermost insulation layer.
3. Where the exterior face of the *vertical fenestration* frame does not extend to the exterior face of the opaque wall rough opening, the exposed exterior portion of the rough opening shall be covered with either a material having an *R*-value not less than R-3, or with minimum 1.5-inch thickness wood.

C402.3 Reserved.

C402.4 Fenestration. Fenestration shall comply with Sections C402.4 through C402.4.4 and Table C402.4. Daylight responsive controls shall comply with this section and Section ((~~C405.2.4.1~~)) C405.2.4.

Exception: For prescriptive envelope compliance, single-pane glazing is permitted for security purposes and for revolving doors, not to exceed 1 percent of the gross exterior wall area. Where Section C402.1.5, component performance alternative, is used, the single glazing shall be included in the percentage of the total glazing area, *U*-factor and SHGC requirements.

TABLE C402.4
BUILDING ENVELOPE FENESTRATION MAXIMUM *U*-FACTOR AND SHGC REQUIREMENTS

CLIMATE ZONE	5 AND MARINE 4	
***U*-factor for Class AW windows rated in accordance with AAMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440, vertical curtain walls and site-built fenestration products[a]**		
Fixed[b] *U*-factor	((~~U-0.38~~)) U-0.34	
Operable *U*-factor	((~~U-0.40~~)) U-0.36	
Entrance doors[d]		
U-factor	U-0.60	
U-factor for all other vertical fenestration		
Fixed *U*-factor	((~~U-0.30~~)) U-0.26	
Operable[c] *U*-factor	U-0.28	
SHGC for all vertical fenestration		
Orientation[a]	**SEW**	**N**
PF < 0.2	0.38	0.51
0.2 ≤ PF < 0.5	0.46	0.56
PF ≥ 0.5	0.61	0.61
Skylights		
***U*-factor**	((~~U-0.50~~)) U-0.45	
SHGC	((~~0.35~~)) 0.32	

Footnotes for Table C402.4

a. U-factor and SHGC shall be rated in accordance with NFRC 100.
b. "Fixed" includes curtain wall, storefront, picture windows, and other fixed windows.
c. "Operable" includes openable fenestration products other than "entrance doors."
d. "Entrance door" includes glazed swinging entrance doors and *automatic* glazed sliding *entrance doors*. Other doors which are not entrance doors, including manually operated sliding glass doors, are considered "operable."
e. "N" indicates vertical fenestration oriented within 30 degrees of true north. "SEW" indicates orientations other than "N."
f. Fenestration that is entirely within the conditioned space or is between conditioned and other enclosed space is exempt from solar heat gain coefficient requirements and not included in the SHGC calculation.

SDCI Informative Note: The category at the top of Table C402.4, labeled *"U-factor for Class AW windows rated in accordance with AAMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440, vertical curtain walls and site-built fenestration products,"* includes *curtain wall*, storefront, ribbon wall, window wall, and similar site-assembled systems, but does not include typical punched-opening manufactured windows except for "Class AW" windows. Class AW is the AAMA designation for windows typically used in mid-rise and high-rise buildings to resist high wind and water intrusion loads.

C402.4.1 Maximum area. The total building vertical fenestration area (not including opaque doors and opaque spandrel panels) shall not exceed ((~~30~~)) 35 percent of the total building gross above-grade wall area. The skylight area shall not exceed 5 percent of the total building gross roof area (skylight-to-roof ratio).

For buildings with more than one *space conditioning category*, compliance with the maximum allowed window-to-wall ratio and skylight-to-roof ratio shall be demonstrated separately for each *space conditioning category*. Interior partition ceiling, wall, fenestration and floor areas that separate space conditioning areas shall not be applied to the window-to-wall ratio and skylight-to-roof ratio calculations.

Exception: For vertical fenestration at street level retail or for other occupancies where the Seattle Land Use Code requires street-level transparency, the fenestration area shall not exceed 75 percent of the area of the street-level wall that faces the street or that adjoins other pedestrian areas used for retail access. For the purposes of this exception, the street-level wall shall be measured from the street-level floor to the interior ceiling level or to 20 feet above floor level, whichever is lowest. When this exception is used, separate calculations shall be performed for these sections of the building envelope, and these values shall not be averaged with any others for compliance purposes. On the street level the 75 percent fenestration area is permitted to be exceeded, if the additional fenestration area is deducted from fenestration allowances from other areas of the building.

C402.4.1.1 Vertical fenestration maximum area with high performance alternates. For buildings that comply with Section C402.4.1.1.1 or C402.4.1.1.2, the total building vertical fenestration area is permitted to exceed ((~~30~~)) 35 percent but shall not exceed 40 percent of the gross above grade wall area for the purpose of prescriptive compliance with Section C402.1.4.

When determining compliance using the component performance alternative in accordance with Section C402.1.5, the total building vertical fenestration area allowed in Equation 4-2 is 40 percent of the above grade wall area for buildings that comply with the vertical fenestration alternates described in this section.

C402.4.1.1.1 Optimized daylighting. All of the following requirements shall be met:

1. Not less than 50 percent of the total *conditioned floor area* in the building is within a *daylight zone* that includes *daylight responsive controls* complying with Section C405.2.4.1.
2. Visible transmittance (VT) of all *vertical fenestration* in the building is greater than or equal to 1.1 times the required solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) in accordance with Section C402.4, or 0.50, whichever is greater. It shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance based on the area weighted average *VT* being greater than or equal to the area weighted average of the minimum *VT* requirements.

   Exception: Fenestration that is outside the scope of NFRC 200 is not required to comply with Item 2.

C402.4.1.1.2 High-performance *fenestration.* All of the following requirements shall be met:

1. All *vertical fenestration* in the building shall comply with the following maximum U-factors:
   a. U-factor for Class AW windows rated in accordance with AAMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440, vertical curtain walls and site-built fenestration products (fixed) = ((~~0.34~~)) 0.30
   b. U-factor for Class AW windows rated in accordance with AAMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440, vertical curtain walls and site-built fenestration products (operable) = 0.36
   c. Entrance doors = 0.60
   d. U-factor for all other vertical fenestration, fixed = ((~~0.28~~)) 0.22
   e. U-factor for all other vertical fenestration, operable = 0.24
2. The SHGC of the vertical fenestration shall be ((~~less than or equal to 0.35, adjusted for projection factor in compliance with C402.4.3~~)) no more than 0.90 times the maximum SHGC values listed in Table C402.4.

An area-weighted average shall be permitted to satisfy the U-factor requirement for each fenestration product category listed in Item 1 of this section. Individual fenestration products from different fenestration product categories shall not be combined in calculating the area-weighted average *U*-factor.

C402.4.2 Minimum skylight fenestration area. For buildings with single story enclosed spaces greater than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) in floor area that are directly under a roof and have a ceiling height greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) for no less than 75 percent of the ceiling area; these single-story spaces shall be provided with *skylights* and *daylight responsive controls* in accordance with Section C405.2.4. Space types required to comply with this provision include office, lobby, atrium, concourse, corridor, gymnasium/exercise center, convention center, automotive service, manufacturing, nonrefrigerated warehouse, retail store, distribution/sorting area, transportation, and workshop. Skylights in these spaces are required to provide a total toplit zone area not less than 50 percent of the floor area and shall provide one of the following:

1. A minimum ratio of skylight area to toplit daylight zone area of not less than 3 percent where all skylights have a VT of at least 0.40 as determined in accordance with Section C303.1.3
2. A minimum skylight effective aperture of at least 1 percent determined in accordance with Equation 4-5.

$$\text{Skylight Effective Aperture} = \frac{(0.85 \times \text{Skylight Area} \times \text{Skylight VT} \times \text{WF})}{\text{Toplit Zone}} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-4)}$$

where:

Skylight area = Total fenestration area of skylights.

Skylight VT = Area weighted average visible transmittance of skylights.

WF = Area weighted average well factor, where well factor is 0.9 if light well depth is less than 2 feet (610 mm), or 0.7 if light well depth is 2 feet (610 mm) or greater, or 1.0 for *tubular daylighting devices* with *VT-annual* ratings measured according to NFRC 203.

Light well depth = Measure vertically from the underside of the lowest point of the skylight glazing to the ceiling plane under the skylight.

Exceptions:

1. Skylights above daylight zones of enclosed spaces are not required in:
   1.1. Reserved.
   1.2. Spaces where the designed *general lighting* power densities are less than 0.5 W/ft^2 (5.4 W/m^2) and at least 10 percent lower than the lighting power allowance in Section C405.4.2.
   1.3. Areas where it is documented that existing structures or natural objects block direct beam sunlight on at least half of the roof over the enclosed area for more than 1,500 daytime hours per year between 8 a.m. and 4 p.m.

1.4. Spaces where the daylight zone under rooftop monitors is greater than 50 percent of the enclosed space floor area.

1.5. Spaces where the total floor area minus the sidelit zone area is less than 2,500 square feet (232 m^2), and where the lighting in the daylight zone is controlled in accordance with Section ((~~C405.2.3.1~~)) C405.2.4.

2. The skylight effective aperture, calculated in accordance with Equation 4-5, is permitted to be 0.66 percent in lieu of one percent if the *VT-annual* of the skylight or TDD, as measured by NFRC 203, is greater than 38 percent.

C402.4.2.1 Lighting controls in daylight zones under skylights. *Daylight responsive controls* complying with Section ((~~C405.2.4.1~~)) C405.2.4 shall be provided to control all electric lights within toplit zones.

C402.4.2.2 Haze factor. Skylights in office, storage, automotive service, manufacturing, nonrefrigerated warehouse, retail store, and distribution/sorting area spaces shall have a glazing material or diffuser with a haze factor greater than 90 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D 1003.

Exception: Skylights designed and installed to exclude direct sunlight entering the occupied space by the use of fixed or automated baffles, or the geometry of skylight and light well.

C402.4.2.3 Daylight zones. Daylight zones referenced in Sections C402.4.1.1 through C402.4.2.2 shall comply with Section C405.2.4.2 and C405.2.4.3, as applicable. Daylight zones shall include *toplit* zones and *sidelit* zones.

C402.4.3 Maximum *U*-factor and SHGC. The maximum *U*-factor and solar heat gain coefficient (SHGC) for fenestration shall be as specified in Table C402.4.

The window projection factor shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-6.

$$PF = A/B \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-6)}$$

Where:

PF = Projection factor (decimal).

A = Distance measured horizontally from the furthest continuous extremity of any overhang, eave, or permanently attached shading device to the vertical surface of the glazing.

B = Distance measured vertically from the bottom of the glazing to the underside of the overhang, eave, or permanently attached shading device.

Where different windows or glass doors have different PF values, they shall each be evaluated separately.

C402.4.3.1 Reserved

C402.4.3.2 Reserved.

C402.4.3.3 Dynamic glazing. Where *dynamic glazing* is intended to satisfy the SHGC and VT requirements of Table C402.4, the ratio of the higher to lower labeled SHGC shall be greater than or equal to 2.4, and the dynamic glazing shall be automatically controlled to modulate the amount of solar gain into the space in multiple steps. Dynamic glazing shall be considered separately from other fenestration, and area-weighted averaging with other fenestration that is not dynamic glazing shall not be permitted.

Exception: Dynamic glazing is not required to comply with this section where both the lower and higher labeled SHGC already comply with the requirements of Table C402.4.

C402.4.3.4 Area-weighted *U*-factor. An area-weighted average shall be permitted to satisfy the *U*-factor requirements for each fenestration product category listed in Table C402.4. Individual fenestration products from different fenestration product categories listed in Table C402.4 shall not be combined in calculating area-weighted average *U*-factor.

C402.4.4 Doors. Opaque swinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.4. Opaque non-swinging doors shall comply with Table C402.1.3. Opaque doors shall be considered part of the gross area of above grade walls that are part of the *building thermal envelope*. Other doors shall comply with the provisions of Section C402.4.3 for vertical fenestration and the entire door area, including the frame, shall be considered part of the fenestration area of the building thermal envelope.

C402.5 Air leakage—thermal envelope. The thermal envelope of buildings shall comply with Sections C402.5.1 through C402.5.8.

C402.5.1 Air barriers. A continuous air barrier shall be provided throughout the building thermal envelope. The air barriers shall be permitted to be located on the inside or outside of the building envelope, located within the assemblies composing the envelope, or any combination thereof. The air barrier shall comply with Sections C402.5.1.1 and C402.5.1.2.

C402.5.1.1 Air barrier construction. The *continuous air barrier* shall be constructed to comply with the following:

1. The air barrier shall be continuous for all assemblies that are the thermal envelope of the building and across the joints and assemblies.
2. Air barrier joints and seams shall be sealed, including sealing transitions in places and changes in materials. The joints and seals shall be securely installed in or on the joint for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to resist positive and negative pressure from wind, stack effect and mechanical ventilation.

3. Penetrations of the air barrier shall be caulked, gasketed or otherwise sealed in a manner compatible with the construction materials and location. Sealing shall allow for expansion, contraction and mechanical vibration. Joints and seams associated with penetrations shall be sealed in the same manner or taped. Sealing materials shall be securely installed around the penetrations so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair the penetrations' ability to resist positive and negative pressure from wind, stack effect, and mechanical ventilation. Sealing of concealed fire sprinklers, where required, shall be in a manner that is recommended by the manufacturer. Caulking or other adhesive sealants shall not be used to fill voids between fire sprinkler cover plates and walls or ceilings.
4. Recessed lighting fixtures shall comply with Section C402.5.8. Where similar objects are installed which penetrate the air barrier, provisions shall be made to maintain the integrity of the air barrier.
5. Construction documents shall contain a diagram showing the building's pressure boundary in plan(s) and section(s) and a calculation of the area of the pressure boundary to be considered in the test.

SDCI Informative Note: The continuous air barrier is intended to control the air leakage into and out of the *conditioned space*. The definition of *conditioned space* includes semi-heated spaces, so these spaces are included when detailing the continuous air barrier and when determining the pressure boundary for conducting the air leakage test. However, unheated spaces are not included when determining the pressure boundary.

C402.5.1.2 Building test. The completed building shall be tested and the air leakage rate of the *building envelope* shall not exceed 0.25 cfm/ft^2 at a pressure differential of 0.3 inches water gauge (((~~2.0~~)) 1.27 L/s × m^2 at 75 Pa))) at the upper 95 percent confidence interval in accordance with ASTM E 779 or an equivalent method approved by the *code official.* A report that includes the tested surface area, floor area, air by volume, stories above grade, and leakage rates shall be submitted to the building owner and the *code official.* If the tested rate exceeds that defined here by up to 0.15 cfm/ft^2, a visual inspection of the air barrier shall be conducted and any leaks noted shall be sealed to the extent practicable. An additional report identifying the corrective actions taken to seal air leaks shall be submitted to the building owner and the Code Official and any further requirement to meet the leakage air rate will be waived. If the tested rate exceeds 0.40 cfm/ft^2, corrective actions must be made and the test completed again. A test above 0.40 cfm/ft^2 will not be accepted.

1. Test shall be accomplished using either (1) both pressurization and depressurization or (2) pressurization alone, but not depressurization alone. The test results shall be plotted against the correct P for pressurization in accordance with Section 9.4 of ASTM E779.
2. The test pressure range shall be from 25 Pa to 80 Pa per Section 8.10 of ASTM E779, but the upper limit shall not be less than 50 Pa, and the difference between the upper and lower limit shall not be less than 25 Pa.
3. If the pressure exponent *n* is less than 0.45 or greater than 0.85 per Section 9.6.4 of ASTM E779, the test shall be rerun with additional readings over a longer time interval.

C402.5.1.2.1 Building test for mixed-use buildings. Where a building is three or fewer stories above grade plane and contains both commercial and residential uses, the air barrier of the R-2 and R-3 occupancy areas of the building is permitted to be separately tested according to Section R402.4.1.2. Alternatively, it is permissible to test the air barrier of the entire building according to Section C402.5.1.2, provided that the tested air leakage rate does not exceed the rate specified in Section C402.5.1.2.

C402.5.2 Reserved.

C402.5.3 Rooms containing fuel-burning appliances. Where combustion air is supplied through openings in an exterior wall to a room or space containing a space conditioning fuel-burning appliance, one of the following shall apply:

1. The room or space containing the appliance shall be located outside of the building thermal envelope.
2. The room or space containing the appliance shall be enclosed and isolated from conditioned spaces inside the building thermal envelope. Such rooms shall comply with all of the following:
    2.1. The walls, floor and ceiling that separate the enclosed room or space from the conditioned spaces shall be insulated to be at least equivalent to the insulation requirement of below grade walls as specified in Table C402.1.3 or C402.1.4.
    2.2. The walls, floors and ceiling that separate the enclosed room or space from conditioned spaces shall be sealed in accordance with Section C402.5.1.1
    2.3. The doors into the enclosed room or space shall be fully gasketed.
    2.4. Water lines and ducts in the enclosed room or space shall be insulated in accordance with Section C403.
    2.5. Where the air duct supplying combustion air to the enclosed room or space passes through conditioned space, the duct shall be insulated to an *R*-value of not less than R-8.

Exception: Fireplaces and stoves complying with Sections 901 through 905 of the *International Mechanical Code*, and Section 2111.13 of the *International Building Code.*

C402.5.4 Doors and access openings to shafts, chutes, stairways, and elevator lobbies. Doors and access openings from conditioned space to shafts, chutes, stairways and elevator lobbies shall be gasketed, weatherstripped or sealed.

Exceptions:

1. Door openings required to comply with Section 716 of the *International Building Code.*
2. Doors and door openings required to comply with UL 1784 by the *International Building Code.*

C402.5.5 Air intakes, exhaust openings, stairways and shafts. Stairway enclosures, elevator shaft vents and other outdoor air intake and exhaust openings integral to the building envelope shall be provided with dampers in accordance with Section ((~~C403.7.9~~)) C403.7.8.

C402.5.6 Loading dock weatherseals. Cargo door openings and loading dock door openings shall be equipped with weatherseals that restrict infiltration and provide direct contact along the top and sides of vehicles that are parked in the doorway.

C402.5.7 Vestibules. All building entrances shall be protected with an enclosed vestibule, with all doors opening into and out of the vestibule equipped with self-closing devices. Vestibules shall be designed so that in passing through the vestibule it is not necessary for the interior and exterior doors to open at the same time. The installation of one or more revolving doors in the building entrance shall not eliminate the requirement that a vestibule be provided on any doors adjacent to revolving doors. For the purposes of this section, "building entrances" shall include exit-only doors in buildings where separate doors for entering and exiting are provided.

Interior and exterior doors shall have a minimum distance between them of not less than 7 feet. The exterior envelope of conditioned vestibules shall comply with the requirements for a conditioned space. Either the interior or exterior envelope of unconditioned vestibules shall comply with the requirements for a conditioned space. The building lobby is not considered a vestibule.

Exception: Vestibules are not required for the following:

1. Doors not intended to be used as building entrances.
2. Unfinished ground-level space greater than 3,000 square feet (298 m^2) if a note is included on the permit documents at each exterior entrance to the space stating "Vestibule required at time of tenant build-out if entrance serves a space greater than 3,000 square feet in area."
3. Doors opening directly from a *sleeping unit* or dwelling unit.
4. Doors between an enclosed space smaller than 3,000 square feet (298 m^2) in area and the exterior of the building or the building entrance lobby, where those doors do not comprise one of the primary building entrance paths to the remainder of the building. The space must be enclosed and separated without transfer air paths from the primary building entrance paths. If there are doors between the space and the primary entrance path then the doors shall be equipped with self-closing devices so the space acts as a vestibule for the primary building entrance.
5. Revolving doors.
6. Doors used primarily to facilitate vehicular movement or material handling and adjacent personnel doors.
7. In buildings less than three stories above grade or in spaces that do not directly connect with the building elevator lobby, doors that have an air curtain with a velocity of not less than 6.56 feet per second (2 m/s) at the floor that have been tested in accordance with ANSI/AMCA 220 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. *Manual* or *automatic* controls shall be provided that will operate the air curtain with the opening and closing of the door. Air curtains and their controls shall comply with Section C408.2.3.
8. Building entrances in buildings that are less than four stories above grade and less than 10,000 square feet in area.
9. Elevator doors in parking garages provided that the elevators have an enclosed lobby at each level of the garage.
10. Entrances to semi-heated spaces.
11. Doors that are used only to access outdoor seating areas that are separated from adjacent walking areas by a fence or other barrier.

SDCI Informative Note: *Building entrance* is defined as the means ordinarily used to gain access to the building. Doors other than *building entrances*, such as those leading to service areas, mechanical rooms, electrical equipment rooms, outdoor seating areas or exits from fire stairways, are not covered by this requirement. There is less traffic through these doors, and the vestibule may limit access for large equipment. Note that enclosed lobbies in parking garages also serve to reduce the flow of vehicle exhaust into the building.

C402.5.8 Recessed lighting. Recessed luminaires installed in the *building thermal envelope* shall be all of the following:

1. IC Rated.
2. *Labeled* as having an air leakage rate of not more than 2.0 cfm (0.944 L/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM E 283 at a 1.57 psf (75 Pa) pressure differential.

3. Sealed with a gasket or caulk between the housing and interior wall or ceiling covering.

SECTION C403
MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

C403.1 General. Mechanical systems and equipment serving heating, cooling, ventilating, and other needs shall comply with this section.

Exceptions:

1. Energy using equipment used by a manufacturing, industrial or commercial process other than for conditioning spaces or maintaining comfort and amenities for the occupants and not otherwise regulated by C403.3.2, Tables C403.3.2(1) through (12) inclusive, C403.7.7, C403.9.2.1, C403.10.3, C403.11.2, C403.11.3, C404.2, Table C404.2, C405.8, and C410. Data center and computer room HVAC equipment is not covered by this exception.
2. *Data center systems* are exempt from Sections C403.4 and C403.5.

C403.1.1 HVAC total system performance ratio *(HVAC TSPR).* For systems serving office, medical office, retail, library and education occupancies and buildings, and the *dwelling units* and residential common areas within R-2 multifamily buildings, which are subject to the requirements of Section C403.3.5 without exceptions, the *HVAC total system performance ratio (HVAC TSPR)* of the *proposed design* HVAC system shall be more than or equal to the *HVAC TSPR* of the *standard reference design* as calculated according to Appendix D, Calculation of HVAC Total System Performance Ratio.

Exceptions:

1. Buildings with *conditioned floor area* less than 5,000 square feet.
2. HVAC systems using district heating water, chilled water or steam.
3. HVAC systems not included in Table D601.11.1.
4. HVAC systems with chilled water supplied by absorption chillers, heat recovery chillers, water to water heat pumps, air to water heat pumps, or a combination of air and water cooled chillers on the same chilled water loop with no more than 10 percent of the cooling capacity of the combination being supplied by air cooled chillers.
5. HVAC system served by heating water plants that include air to water or water to water heat pumps.
6. Underfloor air distribution HVAC systems.
7. Space conditioning systems that do not include mechanical cooling.
8. Alterations to existing buildings that do not substantially replace the entire HVAC system.
9. HVAC systems meeting all the requirements of the standard reference design HVAC system in Table D602.11, Standard Reference Design HVAC Systems.
10. HVAC systems serving laundry rooms, elevator rooms, mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, *data centers*, *computer rooms*, and kitchens.
11. Buildings or areas of medical office buildings that comply fully with ASHRAE Standard 170, including but not limited to surgical centers, or that are required by other applicable codes or standards to provide 24/7 air handling unit operation.

C403.1.2 Calculation of heating and cooling loads. Design loads associated with heating, ventilating and air conditioning of the building shall be determined in accordance with the procedures described in ANSI/ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183 or by an approved equivalent computational procedure, using the design parameters specified in Chapter 3. Heating and cooling loads shall be adjusted to account for load reductions that are achieved where energy recovery systems are utilized in the HVAC system in accordance with the ASHRAE *HVAC Systems and Equipment Handbook* by an approved equivalent computational procedure.

C403.1.3 Data centers. *Data center systems* shall comply with Sections 6 and 8 of ASHRAE Standard 90.4 (2019). ((~~, with the following changes:~~

~~1. Replace design MLC in ASHRAE Standard 90.4 Table 6.2.1.1 "Maximum Design Mechanical Load Component (Design MLC)" with the following per applicable climate zone:~~

~~Zone 4C Design MLC = 0.22~~ ~~Zone 5B Design MLC = 0.24~~

~~2. Replace annualized MLC values of Table 6.2.1.2 "Maximum Annualized Mechanical Load Component (Annualized MLC)" in ASHRAE Standard 90.4 with the following per applicable climate zone:~~

~~Zone 4C Annual MLC = 0.18~~ ~~Zone 5B Annual MLC = 0.17~~))

C403.1.4 Use of electric resistance and fossil fuel–fired HVAC heating equipment. HVAC heating energy shall not be provided by electric resistance or fossil fuel combustion appliances. For the purposes of this section, electric resistance HVAC heating appliances include but are not limited to electric baseboard, electric resistance fan coil and VAV electric resis-

tance terminal reheat units and electric resistance boilers. For the purposes of this section, fossil fuel combustion HVAC heating appliances include but are not limited to appliances burning natural gas, heating oil, propane, or other fossil fuels.

Exceptions:

1. **Effective date.** Permits applied for prior to June 1, 2021.
2. **Low heating capacity.** Buildings or areas of buildings, other than *dwelling units* or sleeping units, that meet the interior temperature requirements of IBC Chapter 12 with a total installed HVAC heating capacity no greater than 8.5 BTU/h (2.5 watts) per square foot of *conditioned space* are permitted to be heated using electric resistance appliances. For the purposes of this exception, overhead or wall-mounted radiant heating panels installed in an unheated or semi-heated space, insulated in compliance with Section C402.2.8 and controlled by occupant sensing devices in compliance with Section C403.11.1 need not be included as part of the HVAC heating energy calculation.
3. **Dwelling and sleeping units.** Dwelling or sleeping units having an installed HVAC heating capacity no greater than 750 watts in any separate habitable room with exterior fenestration are permitted to be heated using electric resistance appliances.
    a. **Corner rooms.** A room within a dwelling or sleeping unit that has two primary walls facing different cardinal directions, each with exterior fenestration, is permitted to have an installed HVAC heating capacity no greater than 1000 watts. Bay windows and other minor offsets are not considered primary walls.
4. **Small buildings.** Buildings with less than 2,500 square feet of *conditioned floor area* are permitted to be heated using electric resistance appliances.
5. **Defrost.** Heat pumps are permitted to utilize electric resistance as the first stage of heating when a heat pump defrost cycle is required and is in operation.
6. **Air-to-air heat pumps.** Buildings are permitted to utilize internal electric resistance heaters to supplement heat pump heating for air-to-air heat pumps that meet all of the following conditions:
    a. Internal electric resistance heaters have controls that prevent supplemental heater operation when the heating load can be met by the heat pump alone during both steady-state operation and setback recovery.
    b. The heat pump controls are configured to use the compressor as the first stage of heating down to an outdoor air temperature of 17°F or lower.
    c. The heat pump complies with one of the following:
        1. Controlled by a digital or electronic thermostat designed for heat pump use that energizes the supplemental heat only when the heat pump has insufficient capacity to maintain set point or to warm up the space at a sufficient rate,
        2. Controlled by a multistage space thermostat and an outdoor air thermostat wired to energize supplemental heat only on the last stage of the space thermostat and when outdoor air temperature is less than 32°F.
        3. The minimum efficiency of the heat pump is regulated by NAECA, its rating meets the requirements shown in Table C403.3.2(2), and its rating includes all usage of internal electric resistance heating.
    d. The heat pump rated heating capacity is sized to meet the heating load at an outdoor air temperature of 32°F or lower and has a rated heating capacity at 47°F no less than 2 times greater than supplemental internal electric resistance heating capacity, or utilizes the smallest available factory-available internal electric resistance heater.
7. **Air-to-water heat pumps, up to 2,000 MBH.** Buildings are permitted to utilize electric resistance auxiliary heating to supplement heat pump heating for hydronic heating systems that have air-to-water heat pump heating capacity no greater than 2000 kBTU/hr at 47°F, and that meet all of the following conditions:
    a. Controls for the auxiliary electric resistance heating are configured to lock out the supplemental heat when the outside air temperature is above 32°F, unless the hot water supply temperature setpoint to the building heat coils cannot be maintained for 20 minutes.
    b. The heat pump controls are configured to use the compressor as the first stage of heating down to an outdoor air temperature of 17°F or lower except during startup or defrost operation.
    c. The heat pump rated heating capacity at 47°F is no less than 2 times greater than supplemental electric resistance heating capacity.
8. **Air-to-water heat pumps, up to 3,000 MBH.** Buildings are permitted to utilize electric resistance auxiliary heating to supplement heat pump heating for hydronic heating systems that have air-to-water heat pump heating capacity greater than 2000 KBTU/hr and no greater than 3000 kBTU/hr at 47°F, and that meet all of the following conditions:

a. Controls for the auxiliary electric resistance heating are configured to lock out the supplemental heat when the outside air temperature is above 36°F, unless the hot water supply temperature setpoint to the building heat coils cannot be maintained for 20 minutes.

b. The heat pump controls are configured to use the compressor as the first stage of heating down to an outdoor air temperature of 17°F or lower except during startup or defrost operation.

c. The heat pump rated heating capacity at 47°F is no less than 1.75 times greater than supplemental electric resistance heating capacity.

9. **Air-to-water heat pumps, over 3,000 MBH.** Buildings are permitted to utilize electric resistance auxiliary heating to supplement heat pump heating for hydronic heating systems that have air-to-water heat pump heating capacity greater than 3000 kBTU/hr at 47°F and that meet all of the following conditions:

   a. Controls for the auxiliary resistance heating are configured to lock out the supplemental heat when the outside air temperature is above 40°F unless the hot water supply temperature setpoint to the building heat coils cannot be maintained for 20 minutes.

   b. The heat pump controls are configured to use the compressor as the first stage of heating down to an outdoor air temperature of 17°F or lower except during startup or defrost operation.

   c. The heat pump rated heating capacity at 47°F is no less than 1.5 times greater than supplemental electric resistance heating capacity.

10. **Ground source heat pumps.** Buildings are permitted to utilize electric resistance auxiliary heating to supplement heat pump heating for hydronic heating systems with ground source heat pump equipment that meets all of the following conditions:

    a. Controls for the auxiliary resistance heating are configured to lock out the supplemental heat when the outdoor air temperature is above 32°F, unless the hot water supply temperature setpoint to the building heat coils cannot be maintained for 20 minutes.

    b. The heat pump controls are configured to use the compressor as the first stage of heating down to an outdoor temperature of 17°F or lower.

    c. The heat pump rated heating capacity at 32°F entering water conditions is no less than 2 times greater than supplemental electric resistance heating capacity.

11. **Small systems.** Buildings in which electric resistance or fossil fuel appliances, including decorative appliances, either provide less than 5 percent of the total building HVAC system heating capacity or serve less than 5 percent of the *conditioned floor area.*

12. **Specific conditions.** Portions of buildings that require fossil fuel or electric resistance space heating for specific conditions *approved* by the *code official* for research, health care, process or other specific needs that cannot practicably be served by heat pump or other space heating systems. This does not constitute a blanket exception for any occupancy type.

13. **Kitchen exhaust.** Make-up air for commercial kitchen exhaust systems required to be tempered by Section 508.1.1 of the International Mechanical Code is permitted to be heated using electric resistance appliances.

14. **District energy.** Steam or hot water district energy systems that utilize fossil fuels as their primary source of heat energy, that serve multiple buildings, and that were already in existence prior to the effective date of this code, including more energy-efficient upgrades to such existing systems, are permitted to serve as the primary heating energy source.

15. **Heat tape.** Heat tape is permitted where it protects water-filled equipment and piping located outside of the *building thermal envelope*, provided that it is configured and controlled to be automatically turned off when the outside air temperature is above 40°F.

16. **Temporary systems.** Temporary electric resistance heating systems are permitted where serving future tenant spaces that are unfinished and unoccupied, provided that the heating equipment is sized and controlled to achieve interior space temperatures no higher than 40°F.

17. **Emergency generators.** Emergency generators are permitted to use fossil fuels.

18. **Pasteurization.** Electric resistance heat controls are permitted to reset the supply water temperature of hydronic heating systems that serve service water heating heat exchangers during pasteurization cycles of the service hot water storage volume. The hydronic heating system supply water temperature shall be configured to be 145°F or lower during the pasteurization cycle.

C403.2 System design. Mechanical systems shall be designed to comply with Sections C403.2.1 and C403.2.2. Where elements of a building's mechanical systems are addressed in Sections C403.3 through C403.13, such elements shall comply with the applicable provisions of those sections.

C403.2.1 Zone isolation required. HVAC systems serving ((~~*zones*~~)) areas that are intended to operate or be occupied nonsimultaneously shall be divided into isolation areas. *Zones* may be grouped into a single isolation area provided it does not exceed 25,000 square feet (2323 m^2) of *conditioned floor area* nor include more than one floor. Each isolation area shall be equipped with isolation devices and controls configured to automatically shut off the supply of conditioned air and outdoor air to and exhaust air from the isolation area. Each isolation area shall be controlled independently by a device meeting the requirements of Section C403.4.2.2. Central systems and plants shall be provided with controls and devices that will allow system and equipment operation for any length of time while serving only the smallest isolation area served by the system or plant.

Exceptions:

1. Exhaust air and outdoor air connections to isolation areas where the fan system to which they connect is not greater than 5,000 cfm (2360 L/s).
2. Exhaust airflow from a single isolation area of less than 10 percent of the design airflow of the exhaust system to which it connects.
3. Isolation areas intended to operate continuously or intended to be inoperative only when all other isolation areas in a *zone* are inoperative.

C403.2.2 Ventilation and exhaust.

C403.2.2.1 Ventilation. Ventilation, either natural or mechanical, shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*. Where mechanical ventilation is provided, the system shall be configured to provide no greater than 150 percent of the minimum outdoor air required by Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code* or other applicable code or standard, whichever is greater.

Exceptions:

1. The mechanical system may supply outdoor air at rates higher than the limit above when it is used for particulate or VOC dilution, economizer, night flushing, dehumidification, pressurization, exhaust make-up, or other process air delivery. Outdoor air shall be reduced to the minimum ventilation rates when not required for the preceding uses.
2. Air systems supplying Group R-1, R-2 or I-2 occupancies.
3. Alterations that replace less than half of the total heating and cooling capacity of the system.
4. Systems with energy recovery complying with the requirements of Section C403.7.6.1 that utilize sensible only active chilled beams for space cooling without any additional zonal fan power. Active chilled beams shall be permitted to utilize the increased outdoor airflow to increase space sensible capacity and to maintain space latent cooling loads without additional controls to reduce the outdoor airflow to each *zone*.

C403.2.2.2 Exhaust. Exhaust shall be provided in accordance with Chapters 4 and 5 of the *International Mechanical Code*. Where exhaust is provided, the system shall be configured to provide no greater than 150 percent of the minimum exhaust air required by Chapters 4 and 5 of the *International Mechanical Code* or other applicable code or standard, whichever is greater.

Exceptions:

1. The mechanical system may exhaust air at rates higher than the limit above when it is used for particulate or VOC dilution, economizer, night flushing, dehumidification, pressure equalization, relief, or other process exhaust air requirements. Outdoor air and exhaust air shall be reduced to the minimum exhaust rates when not required for the preceding uses.
2. Domestic range hood exhaust in Group R occupancies.
3. Exhaust for Group I occupancies.

C403.2.3 Variable flow capacity. For fan and pump motors ((~~7.5~~)) 5 hp and greater including motors in or serving custom and packaged air handlers serving variable air volume fan systems, constant volume fans, parking garage ventilation fans, heating and cooling hydronic pumping systems, pool and service water pumping systems, domestic water pressure-booster systems, cooling tower fan, and other pump or fan motors where variable flows are required, there shall be:

1. Variable speed drives; or
2. Other controls and devices that will result in fan and pump motor demand of no more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume for fans when static pressure set point equals 1/3 the total design static pressure, and 50 percent of design water flow for pumps, based on manufacturer's certified test data. Variable inlet vanes, throttling valves (dampers), scroll dampers or bypass circuits shall not be allowed.

Exception: Variable speed devices are not required for motors that serve:

1. Fans or pumps in packaged equipment where variable speed drives are not available as a factory option from the equipment manufacturer.

2. Fans or pumps that are required to operate only for emergency fire-life-safety events (e.g., stairwell pressurization fans, elevator pressurization fans, fire pumps, etc.).

C403.3 Equipment selection. Heating and cooling equipment installed in mechanical systems shall be sized in accordance with Section C403.3.1 and shall be not less efficient in the use of energy than as specified in Section C403.3.2.

C403.3.1 Equipment and system sizing. The output capacity of heating and cooling equipment shall be not greater than that of the smallest available equipment size that exceeds the loads calculated in accordance with Section C403.1.2. A single piece of equipment providing both heating and cooling shall satisfy this provision for one function with the capacity for the other function as small as possible, within available equipment options.

Exceptions:

1. Required standby equipment and systems provided with controls and devices that allow such systems or equipment to operate automatically only when the primary equipment is not operating.
2. Multiple units of the same equipment type with combined capacities exceeding the design load and provided with controls that are configured to sequence the operation of each unit based on load.

C403.3.2 HVAC equipment performance requirements. Equipment shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Tables C403.3.2(1) through ((~~C403.3.2(12)~~)) C403.3.2(13) when tested and rated in accordance with the applicable test procedure. Plate-type liquid-to-liquid heat exchangers shall meet the minimum requirements of Table C403.3.2(10). The efficiency shall be verified through certification and listed under an *approved* certification program or, if no certification program exists, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the manufacturer. Where multiple rating conditions or performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall satisfy all stated requirements. Where components, such as indoor or outdoor coils, from different manufacturers are used, calculations and supporting data shall be furnished by the designer that demonstrates that the combined efficiency of the specified components meets the requirements herein.

Gas-fired and oil-fired forced air furnaces with input ratings of 225,000 Btu/h (65 kW) or greater and all unit heaters shall also have an intermittent ignition or interrupted device (IID), and have either mechanical draft (including power venting) or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space. All furnaces with input ratings of 225,000 Btu/h (65 kW) or greater, including electric furnaces, that are not located within the conditioned space shall have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating.

Air-to-water heat pump manufacturers shall report the hourly heating output or heating efficiency with and without defrost operation at 32°F, in addition to meeting the efficiency requirements of Table C403.3.2(13) at the AHRI 550/590 applicable leaving water temperatures. The hourly heating output or heating efficiency with and without defrost operation shall be documented on the mechanical permit drawings.

Exception: Heat recovery chillers and air-to-water heat pumps covered under Table C403.3.2(13), are not required to be listed in the AHRI certification program for AHRI 550/590. The equipment heating and cooling efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the manufacturer at AHRI 550/590 conditions. Where multiple rating conditions or performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall satisfy all stated requirements.

SDCI Informative Note: Table C403.3.2.(13) is from ASHRAE 90.1-2019. At the time of the adoption of the 2018 SEC there were no air-to-water heat pumps or heat recovery chillers listed in the AHRI Certified Product Directory: https://www.ahridirectory.org. According to AHRI 550/590 Section 5.3, "Full and part-load application ratings shall include the range of Rating Conditions listed in Table 2 or be within the operating limits of the equipment."

C403.3.2.1 Chillers. Chilled water plants and buildings with more than 500 tons total capacity shall not have more than 100 tons provided by air-cooled chillers.

Exceptions:

1. Where the designer demonstrates that the water quality at the building site fails to meet manufacturer's specifications for the use of water-cooled equipment.
2. Air-cooled chillers with minimum efficiencies at least 10 percent higher than those listed in Table C403.3.2(7).
3. Replacement of existing air-cooled chiller equipment.
4. Air-to-water heat pump units that are configured to provide both heating and cooling and that are rated in accordance with AHRI 550/590. ((~~Where the air-to-water heat pumps are designed for a maximum supply leaving water temperature of less than 140°F, the efficiency rating will be calculated and reported at the maximum unit leaving water temperature for this test condition.~~))

TABLE C403.3.2(1)A
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air conditioners, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System	13.0 SEER	AHRI 210/240
			Single Package	14.0 SEER	
Through-the-wall (air cooled)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split system	12.0 SEER	
			Single Package	12.0 SEER	
Small-duct high-velocity (air cooled)	≤ 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System	11.0 SEER	
Air conditioners, air cooled	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.2 EER 12.9 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.0 EER 12.7 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.0 EER 12.4 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	10.8 EER 12.2 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	10.0 EER 11.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	9.8 EER 11.4 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	9.7 EER 11.2 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	9.5 EER 11.0 IEER	
Air conditioners, water cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 210/240
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 13.9 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.9 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.5 EER 13.9 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	12.3 EER 13.7 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.4 EER 13.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	12.2 EER 13.4 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.2 EER 13.5 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	12.0 EER 13.3 IEER	

TABLE C403.3.2(1)A (continued)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air conditioners, evaporatively cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 210/240
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.1 EER 12.3 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	12.0 EER 12.2 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.8 EER 12.0 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h and < 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.9 EER 12.1 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	
	≥ 760,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.7 EER 11.9 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	11.5 EER 11.7 IEER	
Condensing units, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h			10.5 EER 11.8 IEER	AHRI 365
Condensing units, water cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h			13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	
Condensing units, evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/h			13.5 EER 14.0 IEER	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 12 of the referenced standard contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Single-phase, air-cooled air conditioners less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated by NAECA. SEER values are those set by NAECA.

TABLE C403.3.2(1)B
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW AIR CONDITIONERS

Equipment Type	Size Category	Heating Section Type	Sub-Category or Rating Condition	Minimum Efficiency	Test Procedure[a]
VRF Air Conditioners, Air Cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System	13.0 SEER	AHRI 1230
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	VRF Multi-split System	11.2 EER 15.5 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	VRF Multi-split System	11.0 EER 14.9 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	VRF Multi-split System	10.0 EER ((~~13.9 EER~~)) 13.9 IEER	

TABLE C403.3.2(1)C
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW AIR-TO-AIR AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS

Equipment Type	Size Category	Heating Section Type	Sub-Category or Rating Condition	Minimum Efficiency	Test Procedure[a]
VRF Air Cooled, (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System	13.0 SEER	AHRI 1230
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	VRF Multi-split System	11.0 EER 14.6 IEER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	VRF Multi-split System with Heat Recovery	10.8 EER 14.4 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	VRF Multi-split System	10.6 EER 13.9 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	VRF Multi-split System with Heat Recovery	10.4 EER 13.7 EER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	VRF Multi-split System	9.5 EER 12.7 EER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	VRF Multi-split System with Heat Recovery	9.3 EER 12.5 EER	
VRF Water source (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split systems 86°F entering water	12.0 SEER 16.0 IEER	AHRI 1230
	< 65,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split systems with Heat Recovery 86°F entering water	11.8 EER 15.8 IEER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split systems 86°F entering water	12.0 EER 16.0 IEER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split systems with Heat Recovery 86°F entering water	11.8 EER 15.8 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split systems 86°F entering water	10.0 EER 14.0 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split systems with Heat Recovery 86°F entering water	9.8 EER 13.8 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split systems 86°F entering water	12.0 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split systems with Heat Recovery 86°F entering water	11.8 IEER	
VRF Groundwater source (cooling mode)	<135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System 59ºF entering water	16.2 EER	AHRI 1230
	<135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System with Heat Recovery 59ºF entering water	16.0 EER	
	≥135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System 59ºF entering water	13.8 EER	
	≥135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System with Heat Recovery 59ºF entering water	13.6 EER	

TABLE C403.3.2(1)C (continued)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW AIR-TO-AIR AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS

Equipment Type	Size Category	Heating Section Type	Sub-Category or Rating Condition	Minimum Efficiency	Test Procedure[a]
VRF Ground source (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System 77ºF entering water	13.4 EER	AHRI 1230
	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System with Heat Recovery 77ºF entering water	13.2 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System 77ºF entering water	11.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h	All	VRF Multi-split System with Heat Recovery 77ºF entering water	10.8 EER	
VRF Air Cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	VRF Multi-split System	7.7 HSPF	AHRI 1230
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	VRF Multi-split system 47ºF db/43ºF wb outdoor air 17ºF db/15ºF wb outdoor air	3.3 COP 2.25 COP	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	VRF Multi-split System 47ºF db/43ºF wb outdoor air 17ºF db/15ºF wb outdoor air	3.2 COP 2.05 COP	
VRF Water source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	VRF Multi-split System 68ºF entering water	4.3 COP	AHRI 1230
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	VRF Multi-split System 68ºF entering water	4.0 COP	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	VRF Multi-split System 68ºF entering water	3.9 COP	
VRF Groundwater source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	VRF Multi-split System 50ºF entering water	3.6 COP	AHRI 1230
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	VRF Multi-split System 50ºF entering water	3.3 COP	
VRF Ground source (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	VRF Multi-split System 32ºF entering water	3.1 COP	AHRI 1230
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	VRF Multi-split System 32ºF entering water	2.8 COP	

TABLE C403.3.2(2)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Air cooled (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System	14.0 SEER	AHRI 210/240
			Single Package	14.0 SEER	
Through-the-wall, air cooled (cooling mode)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System	12.0 SEER	
			Single Package	12.0 SEER	
Small duct high velocity, air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	All	Split System	11.0 SEER	
Air cooled (cooling mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	11.0 EER 12.2 IEER	AHRI 340/360
		All other	Split System and Single Package	10.8 EER 12.0 IEER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	10.6 EER 11.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	10.4 EER 11.4 IEER	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Electric Resistance (or None)	Split System and Single Package	9.5 EER 10.6 IEER	
		All other	Split System and Single Package	9.3 EER 10.4 IEER	
Water to air, water loop (cooling mode)	< 17,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	All	86°F entering water	12.2 EER	ISO 13256-1
	≥ 17,000 Btu/h and < 65,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	13.0 EER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	13.0 EER	
Water to air, groundwater (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	18.0 EER	
Brine to air, ground loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering water	14.1 EER	
Water- to water, water loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	86°F entering water	10.6 EER	ISO 13256-2
Water to water, ground water (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	59°F entering water	16.3 EER	
Brine to water, ground loop (cooling mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h	All	77°F entering fluid	12.1 EER	
Air cooled (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	—	Split System	8.2 HSPF	AHRI 210/240
		—	Single Package	8.0 HSPF	
Through-the-wall, (air cooled, heating mode)	≤ 30,000 Btu/h[b] (cooling capacity)	—	Split System	7.4 HSPF	
		—	Single Package	7.4 HSPF	
Small-duct high velocity (air cooled, heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h[b]	—	Split System	6.8 HSPF	
Air cooled (heating mode)	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	47ºF db/43ºF wb Outdoor Air	3.3 COP	AHRI 340/360
			17ºF db/15ºF wb Outdoor Air	2.25 COP	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	47ºF db/43ºF wb Outdoor Air	3.2 COP	
			17ºF db/15ºF wb Outdoor Air	2.05 COP	

TABLE C403.3.2(2) (continued)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED UNITARY AND APPLIED HEAT PUMPS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	HEATING SECTION TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Water to air, water loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	4.3 COP	ISO 13256-1
Water to air, groundwater (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	50°F entering water	3.7 COP	
Brine to air, ground loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering fluid	3.2 COP	
Water- to water, water loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	68°F entering water	3.7 COP	ISO 13256-2
			50°F entering water	3.1 COP	
Brine to water, ground loop (heating mode)	< 135,000 Btu/h (cooling capacity)	—	32°F entering fluid	2.5 COP	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

a. Chapter 12 of the referenced standard contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the reference year version of the test procedure.

b. Single-phase, air-cooled air conditioners less than 65,000 Btu/h are regulated by NAECA. SEER values are those set by NAECA.

TABLE C403.3.2(3)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS, PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONERS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL HEAT PUMPS, ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS AND ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER HEAT PUMPS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
PTAC (cooling mode) new construction	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	14.0 – (0.300 × Cap/1000) EER	AHRI 310/380
PTAC (cooling mode) replacements[b]	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	10.9 - (0.213 × Cap/1000) EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) new construction	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	14.0 - (0.300 × Cap/1000) EER	
PTHP (cooling mode) replacements[b]	All Capacities	95°F db outdoor air	10.8 - (0.213 × Cap/1000) EER	
PTHP (heating mode) new construction	All Capacities	—	3.7 - (0.052 × Cap/1000) COP	
PTHP (heating mode) replacements[b]	All Capacities	—	2.9 - (0.026 × Cap/1000) COP	
SPVAC (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	11.0 EER	AHRI 390
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	11.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	11.0 EER	
SPVHP (cooling mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	11.0 EER	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	11.0 EER	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	95°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	11.0 EER	
SPVHP (heating mode)	< 65,000 Btu/h	47°F db/ 43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP	AHRI 390
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 135,000 Btu/h	47°F db/ 43°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP	
	≥ 135,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	47°F db/ 75°F wb outdoor air	3.3 COP	

TABLE C403.3.2(3) (continued)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
ELECTRICALLY OPERATED PACKAGED TERMINAL AIR CONDITIONERS, PACKAGED TERMINAL HEAT PUMPS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL AIR CONDITIONERS, SINGLE-PACKAGE VERTICAL HEAT PUMPS, ROOM AIR CONDITIONERS AND ROOM AIR-CONDITIONER HEAT PUMPS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Room air conditioners, with louvered sides	< 6,000 Btu/h	—	11.0 CEER	ANSI/AHA-MRAC-1
	≥ 6,000 Btu/h and < 8,000 Btu/h	—	11.0 CEER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 14,000 Btu/h	—	10.9 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	10.7 CEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h and ≤ 25,000 Btu/h	—	9.4 CEER	
	> 25,000 Btu/h	—	9.0 CEER	
Room air conditioners, without louvered sides	< 6,000 Btu/h	—	10.0 CEER	
	≥ 6,000 Btu/h and < 8,000 Btu/h	—	10.0 CEER	
	≥ 8,000 Btu/h and < 11,000 Btu/h	—	9.6 CEER	
	≥ 11,000 Btu/h and < 14,000 Btu/h	—	9.5 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h and < 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.4 CEER	
Room air-conditioner heat pumps with louvered sides	< 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.8 CEER	ANSI/AHA-MRAC-1
	≥ 20,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	
Room air-conditioner heat pumps without louvered sides	< 14,000 Btu/h	—	9.3 CEER	
	≥ 14,000 Btu/h	—	8.7 CEER	
Room air conditioner casement only	All capacities	—	9.5 CEER	
Room air conditioner casement-slider	All capacities	—	10.4 CEER	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

"Cap" = The rated cooling capacity of the product in Btu/h. If the unit's capacity is less than 7000 Btu/h, use 7000 Btu/h in the calculation. If the unit's capacity is greater than 15,000 Btu/h, use 15,000 Btu/h in the calculations.

a. Chapter 12 of the referenced standard contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.

b. Replacement unit shall be factory labeled as follows: "MANUFACTURED FOR NONSTANDARD SIZE APPLICATIONS ONLY: NOT TO BE INSTALLED IN NEW STANDARD PROJECTS" or MANUFACTURED FOR REPLACEMENT APPLICATIONS ONLY: NOT TO BE INSTALLED IN NEW CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS." Replacement efficiencies apply only to units with existing sleeves less than 16 inches (406 mm) in height and less than 42 inches (1067 mm) in width.

TABLE C403.3.2(4)
WARM-AIR FURNACES AND COMBINATION WARM-AIR FURNACES/AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS, WARM-AIR DUCT FURNACES AND UNIT HEATERS, MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY[d, e]	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Warm-air furnaces, gas fired	< 225,000 Btu/h	—	80% AFUE or 80%*Et*[c]	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 or ANSI Z21.47
	≥ 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[c]	80%*Et*[f]	ANSI Z21.47
Warm-air furnaces, oil fired	< 225,000 Btu/h	—	83% AFUE or 80%*Et*[c]	DOE 10 CFR Part 430 or UL 727
	≥ 225,000 Btu/h	Maximum capacity[b]	81%*Et*[g]	UL 727
Warm-air duct furnaces, gas fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[b]	80%*Ec*	ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, gas fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[b]	80%*Ec*	ANSI Z83.8
Warm-air unit heaters, oil fired	All capacities	Maximum capacity[b]	80%*Ec*	UL 731

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

a. Chapter 12 of the referenced standard contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.

b. Minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit's controls.

c. Combination units not covered by the National Appliance Energy Conservation Act of 1987 (NAECA) (3-phase power or cooling capacity greater than or equal to 65,000 Btu/h [19 kW]) shall comply with either rating.

d. *Et* = Thermal efficiency. See test procedure for detailed discussion.

e. *Ec* = Combustion efficiency (100% less flue losses). See test procedure for detailed discussion.

f. *Ec* = Combustion efficiency. Units must also include an IID, have jackets not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.

g. *Et* = Thermal efficiency. Units must also include an IID, have jacket losses not exceeding 0.75 percent of the input rating, and have either power venting or a flue damper. A vent damper is an acceptable alternative to a flue damper for those furnaces where combustion air is drawn from the conditioned space.

TABLE C403.3.2(5)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: GAS- AND OIL-FIRED BOILERS

EQUIPMENT TYPE[a]	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	SIZE CATEGORY (INPUT)	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY[d, e]	TEST PROCEDURE
Boilers, hot water	Gas-fired	< 300,000 Btu/h[f, g]	82% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	80% *Et*	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[a]	82% *Ec*	
	Oil-fired[c]	< 300,000 Btu/h[g]	84% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	82% *Et*	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[a]	84% *Ec*	
Boilers, steam	Gas-fired	< 300,000 Btu/h[f]	80% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
	Gas-fired- all, except natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	79% *Et*	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[a]	79% *Et*	
	Gas-fired-natural draft	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	79% *Et*	
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[a]	79% *Et*	
	Oil-fired[c]	< 300,000 Btu/h	82% AFUE	10 CFR Part 430
		≥ 300,000 Btu/h and ≤ 2,500,000 Btu/h[b]	81% *Et*	10 CFR Part 431
		> 2,500,000 Btu/h[a]	81% *Et*	

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

Ec = Combustion efficiency (100 percent less flue losses). *Et* = Thermal efficiency. See referenced standard document for detailed information.

a. These requirements apply to boilers with rated input of 8,000,000 Btu/h or less that are not packaged boilers and to all packaged boilers. Minimum efficiency requirements for boilers cover all capacities of packaged boilers.

b. Maximum capacity—minimum and maximum ratings as provided for and allowed by the unit's controls.

c. Includes oil-fired (residual).

d. Boilers shall not be equipped with a constant burning ignition pilot.

e. A boiler not equipped with a tankless domestic water heating coil shall be equipped with an automatic means for adjusting the temperature of the water such that an incremental change in inferred heat load produces a corresponding incremental change in the temperature of the water supplied.

TABLE C403.3.2(6)
RESERVED

TABLE C403.3.2(7)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: WATER CHILLING PACKAGES[a, b]

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	UNITS	PATH A		PATH B		TEST PROCEDURE[c]
			FULL LOAD	IPLV	FULL LOAD	IPLV	
Air-cooled chillers	< 150 tons	EER	≥ 10.100	≥ 13.700	≥ 9.700	≥ 15.800	AHRI 550/590
	≥ 150 tons	EER	≥ 10.100	≥ 14.000	≥ 9.700	≥ 16.100	
Air cooled without condenser, electrical operated	All capacities	EER	Air-cooled chillers without condensers shall be rated with matching condensers and comply with the air-cooled chiller efficiency requirements.				
Water cooled, electrically operated, positive displacement	< 75 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.750	≤ 0.600	≤ 0.780	≤ 0.500	
	≥ 75 tons and < 150 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.720	≤ 0.560	≤ 0.750	≤ 0.490	
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.660	≤ 0.540	≤ 0.680	≤ 0.440	
	≥ 300 tons and < 600 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.610	≤ 0.520	≤ 0.625	≤ 0.410	
	≥ 600 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.560	≤ 0.500	≤ 0.585	≤ 0.380	
Water cooled, electrically operated, centrifugal	< 150 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.610	≤ 0.550	≤ 0.695	≤ 0.440	
	≥ 150 tons and < 300 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.610	≤ 0.550	≤ 0.695	≤ 0.400	
	≥ 300 tons and < 400 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.560	≤ 0.520	≤ 0.595	≤ 0.390	
	≥ 400 tons	kW/ton	≤ 0.560	≤ 0.500	≤ 0.585	≤ 0.380	
Air cooled, absorption single effect	All capacities	COP	≥ 0.600	NR	NA	NA	AHRI 560
Water cooled, absorption single effect	All capacities	COP	≥ 0.700	NR	NA	NA	
Absorption double effect, indirect fired	All capacities	COP	≥ 1.000	≥ 1.050	NA	NA	
Absorption double effect, direct fired	All capacities	COP	≥ 1.000	≥ 1.000	NA	NA	

Keys for Table C403.2.3(7)

For SI: 1 ton = 3517 W, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

NA = Not applicable, not to be used for compliance; NR = No requirement.

Footnotes for Table C403.2.3(7)

((~~a. The centrifugal chiller equipment requirements, after adjustment in accordance with Section C403.3.2.2 or Section C403.3.2.3, do not apply to chillers used in low-temperature applications where the design leaving fluid temperature is less than 36ºF. The requirements do not apply to positive displacement chillers with leaving fluid temperatures less than or equal to 32ºF. The requirements do not apply to absorption chillers with design leaving fluid temperatures less than 40ºF.~~))

a. The requirements for air-cooled, water-cooled positive displacement, and absorption chillers are at standard rating conditions defined in the reference test procedure. The requirements for centrifugal chillers shall be adjusted for nonstandard rating conditions per Section C403.2.3.1 and are only applicable for the range of conditions listed there.

b. Compliance with this standard can be obtained by meeting the minimum requirements of Path A or B. However, both the full load and IPLV shall be met to fulfill the requirements of Path A or B.

c. Chapter 12 of the referenced standard contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.

TABLE C403.3.2(8)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: HEAT REJECTION EQUIPMENT

EQUIPMENT TYPE[a]	TOTAL SYSTEM HEAT REJECTION CAPACITY AT RATED CONDITIONS	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION[i]	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED[b, c, d, g, h]	TEST PROCEDURE[e, f]
Propeller or axial fan open circuit cooling towers	All	95°F Entering Water 85°F Leaving Water 75°F Entering wb	≥ 40.2 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal fan open circuit cooling towers	All	95°F Entering Water 85°F Leaving Water 75°F Entering wb	≥ 20.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105 and CTI STD-201 RS
Propeller or axial fan closed circuit cooling towers	All	102°F Entering Water 90°F Leaving Water 75°F Entering wb	≥ 16.1 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105S and CTI STD-201 RS
Centrifugal closed circuit cooling towers	All	102°F Entering Water 90°F Leaving Water 75°F Entering wb	≥ 7.0 gpm/hp	CTI ATC-105S and CTI STD-201 RS
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	R-507A Test Fluid 165°F Entering Gas Temperature 105°F Condensing Temperature 75°F Entering wb	≥ 157,000 Btu/h • hp	CTI ATC-106
Propeller or axial fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia Test Fluid 140°F Entering Gas Temperature 96.3°F Condensing Temperature 75°F Entering wb	≥ 134,000 Btu/h • hp	CTI ATC-106
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	R-507A Test Fluid 165°F Entering Gas Temperature 105°F Condensing Temperature 75°F Entering wb	≥ 135,000 Btu/h • hp	CTI ATC-106
Centrifugal fan evaporative condensers	All	Ammonia Test Fluid 140°F Entering Gas Temperature 96.3°F Condensing Temperature 75°F Entering wb	≥ 110,000 Btu/h • hp	CTI ATC-106
Air-cooled condensers	All	125°F Condensing Temperature R-22 Test Fluid 190°F Entering Gas Temperature 15°F Subcooling 95°F Entering db	≥ 176,000 Btu/h • hp	AHRI 460

For SI: °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8, L/s · kW = (gpm/hp)/(11.83), COP = (Btu/h · hp)/(2550.7).

db = dry bulb temperature, °F, wb = wet bulb temperature, °F.

a. The efficiencies and test procedures for both open and closed circuit cooling towers are not applicable to hybrid cooling towers that contain a combination of wet and dry heat exchange sections.

b. For purposes of this table, open circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition divided by the fan nameplate rated motor power.

c. For purposes of this table, closed circuit cooling tower performance is defined as the water flow rating of the tower at the thermal rating condition divided by the sum of the fan nameplate rated motor power and the spray pump nameplate rated motor power.

d. For purposes of this table, air-cooled condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected from the refrigerant divided by the fan nameplate rated motor power.

e. Chapter 12 of the referenced standard contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.

f. Where a certification program exists for a covered product, and it includes provisions for verification and challenge of equipment efficiency ratings, then the product shall be listed in the certification program, or, if a certification program exists for a covered product, and it includes provisions for verification and challenge of equipment efficiency ratings, but the product is not listed in the existing certification program, the ratings shall be verified by an independent laboratory test report.

g. Cooling towers shall comply with the minimum efficiency listed in the table for that specific type of tower with the capacity effect of any project-specific accessories and/or options included in the capacity of the cooling tower.

h. For purposes of this table, evaporative condenser performance is defined as the heat rejected at the specified rating condition in the table, divided by the sum of the fan motor nameplate power and the integral spray pump nameplate power.

i. Requirements for evaporative condensers are listed with ammonia (R-717) and R-507A as test fluids in this table. Evaporative condensers intended for use with halocarbon refrigerants other than R-507A must meet the minimum efficiency requirements listed above with R-507A as the test fluid.

TABLE C403.3.2(9)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS SERVING COMPUTER ROOMS AND DATA CENTERS

Equipment Type	Net Sensible Cooling Capacity[a]	Standard Model	Minimum Net Sensible COP_c Return Air Dry-Bulb Temperature/Dew-Point Temperature Class 1 75°F/52°F	Class 2 85°F/52°F	Class 3 95°F/52°F	Test Procedure
Air cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.30		AHRI 1360
		Upflow unit—ducted		2.10		
		Upflow unit—unducted	2.09			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.45	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.20		
		Upflow unit—ducted		2.05		
		Upflow unit—unducted	1.99			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.35	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.00		
		Upflow unit—ducted		1.85		
		Upflow unit—unducted	1.79			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.15	
Water cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.50		AHRI 1360
		Upflow unit—ducted		2.30		
		Upflow unit—unducted	2.25			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.70	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.40		
		Upflow unit—ducted		2.20		
		Upflow unit—unducted	2.15			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.45	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.25		
		Upflow unit—ducted		2.10		
		Upflow unit—unducted	2.05			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.45	
Water cooled with fluid economizer	< 65,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.45		AHRI 1360
		Upflow unit—ducted		2.25		
		Upflow unit—unducted	2.20			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.60	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.35		
		Upflow unit—ducted		2.15		
		Upflow unit—unducted	2.10			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.55	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.20		
		Upflow unit—ducted		2.05		
		Upflow unit—unducted	2.00			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.40	

TABLE C403.3.2(9) (continued)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS:
AIR CONDITIONERS AND CONDENSING UNITS SERVING COMPUTER ROOMS AND DATA CENTERS

Equipment Type	Net Sensible Cooling Capacity[a]	Standard Model	Minimum Net Sensible COP_c Return Air Dry-Bulb Temperature/Dew-Point Temperature			Test Procedure
			Class 1 75°F/52°F	Class 2 85°F/52°F	Class 3 95°F/52°F	
Glycol cooled	< 65,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.30		AHRI 1360
		Upflow unit—ducted		2.10		
		Upflow unit—unducted	2.00			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.40	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.05		
		Upflow unit—ducted		1.85		
		Upflow unit—unducted	1.85			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.15	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		1.95		
		Upflow unit—ducted		1.80		
		Upflow unit—unducted	1.75			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.10	
Glycol cooled with fluid economizer	< 65,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		2.25		AHRI 1360
		Upflow unit—ducted		2.10		
		Upflow unit—unducted	2.00			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.35	
	≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		1.95		
		Upflow unit—ducted		1.80		
		Upflow unit—unducted	1.75			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.10	
	≥ 240,000 Btu/h	Downflow unit		1.90		
		Upflow unit—ducted		1.80		
		Upflow unit—unducted	1.70			
		Horizontal-flow unit			2.10	

TABLE C403.3.2(10)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: HEAT TRANSFER EQUIPMENT

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE[a]
Liquid-to-liquid heat exchangers	Plate type	NR	AHRI 400

NR = No Requirement

a. Chapter 12 of the referenced standard contains a complete specification of the referenced test procedure, including the referenced year version of the test procedure.

TABLE C403.3.2(11)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: ELECTRICALLY OPERATED DX-DOAS UNITS, SINGLE-PACKAGE AND REMOTE CONDENSER, WITHOUT ENERGY RECOVERY

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE
Air cooled (dehumidification mode)		4.0 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Air source heat pumps (dehumidification mode)		4.0 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Water cooled (dehumidification mode)	Cooling tower condenser water	4.9 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Chilled water	6.0 ISMRE	
Air source heat pump (heating mode)		2.7 ISCOP	AHRI 920
Water source heat pump (dehumidification mode)	Ground source, closed loop	4.8 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Ground-water source	5.0 ISMRE	
	Water source	4.0 ISMRE	
Water source heat pump (heating mode)	Ground source, closed loop	2.0 ISCOP	AHRI 920
	Ground-water source	3.2 ISCOP	
	Water source	3.5 ISCOP	

TABLE C403.3.2(12)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: ELECTRICALLY OPERATED DX-DOAS UNITS, SINGLE-PACKAGE AND REMOTE CONDENSER, WITH ENERGY RECOVERY

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	MINIMUM EFFICIENCY	TEST PROCEDURE
Air cooled (dehumidification mode)		5.2 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Air source heat pumps (dehumidification mode)		5.2 ISMRE	AHRI 920
Water cooled (dehumidification mode)	Cooling tower condenser water	5.3 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Chilled water	6.6 ISMRE	
Air source heat pump (heating mode)		3.3 ISCOP	AHRI 920
Water source heat pump (dehumidification mode)	Ground source, closed loop	5.2 ISMRE	AHRI 920
	Ground-water source	5.8 ISMRE	
	Water source	4.8 ISMRE	
Water source heat pump (heating mode)	Ground source, closed loop	3.8 ISCOP	AHRI 920
	Ground-water source	4.0 ISCOP	
	Water source	4.8 ISCOP	

TABLE C403.3.2(13)[f,g,h,i]
HEAT PUMP AND HEAT RECOVERY CHILLER PACKAGES—MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

Equipment Type	Size Category (ton_R)	Cooling only Operation Cooling Efficiency[a] (Air EER FL/IPLV-Btu/W-h) Water Source Power Input per Capacity FL/IPLV-(kW/ton_R)		Heating Operation									Test Procedure
				Heating Source Conditions (Entering/ leaving water) or OAT (db/wb) °F	Heat Pump Heating Full Load Efficiency (COP_H)[b,c], (W/W)				Heat Recovery Chiller Full Load Efficiency Full Load Efficiency (COP_{HR})[b,c], (W/W) Simultaneous Cooling and Heating Full Load Efficiency (COP_{SHC})[b], (W/W)				
					Leaving Heating Water Temperature				Leaving Heating Water Temperature				
					Low	Medium	High	Boost	Low	Medium	High	Boost	
		Path A	Path B		105°F	120°F	140°F	140°F	105°F	120°F	140°F	140°F	
Air Source	All sizes	≥ 9.595 FL ≥ 13.02 IPLV.IP	≥ 9.215 FL ≥ 15.01 IPLV.IP	47 db 43 wb[d]	≥ 3.290	≥ 2.770	≥ 2.310	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	AHRI 550/590
		≥ 9.595 FL ≥ 13.30 IPLV.IP	≥ 9.215 FL ≥ 15.30 IPLV.IP	17 db 15 wb[d]	≥ 2.230	≥ 1.950	≥ 1.630	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	
Water source electrically operated positive displacement	< 75	≤ 0.7885 FL ≤ 0.6316 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7875 FL ≤ 0.5145 IPLV.IP	54/44[e]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	AHRI 550/590
				75/65[e]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150	
	≥ 75 and <150	≤ 0.7579 FL ≤ 0.5895 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7140 FL ≤ 0.4620 IPLV.IP	54/44[e]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	
				75/65[e]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150	
	≥ 150 and <300	≤ 0.6947 FL ≤ 0.5684 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7140 FL ≤ 0.4620 IPLV.IP	54/44[e]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	
				75/65[e]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150	
	≥ 300 and <600	≤ 0.6421 FL ≤ 0.5474 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6563 FL ≤ 0.4305 IPLV.IP	54/44[e]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA	
				75/65[e]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.900	NA	NA	NA	6.850	
	≥ 600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6143 FL ≤ 0.3990 IPLV.IP	54/44[e]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA	
				75/65[e]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.900	NA	NA	NA	6.850	
Water source electrically operated centrifugal	< 75	≤ 0.6421 FL ≤ 0.5789 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.7316 FL ≤ 0.4632 IPLV.IP	54/44[e]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	AHRI 550/590
				75/65[e]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150	
	≥ 75 and <150	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5474 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6684 FL ≤ 0.4211 IPLV.IP	54/44[e]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	
				75/65[e]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150	
	≥ 150 and <300	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6263 FL ≤ 0.4105 IPLV.IP	54/44[e]	≥ 4.640	≥ 3.680	≥ 2.680	NA	≥ 8.330	≥ 6.410	≥ 4.420	NA	
				75/65[e]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.550	NA	NA	NA	6.150	
	≥ 300 and <600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6158 FL ≤ 0.4000 IPLV.IP	54/44[e]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA	
				75/65[e]	NA	NA	NA	≥ 3.900	NA	NA	NA	6.850	
	≥ 600	≤ 0.5895 FL ≤ 0.5263 IPLV.IP	≤ 0.6158 FL ≤ 0.4000 IPLV.IP	54/44[e]	≥ 4.930	≥ 3.960	≥ 2.970	NA	≥ 8.900	≥ 6.980	≥ 5.000	NA	
				75/65[e]	NA	NA	NA	≥3.900	NA	NA	NA	6.850	

Table ©ASHRAE, www.ashrae.org. Used with permission from 2019 ASHRAE Standard 90.1

Footnotes:

a. Cooling-only rating conditions are standard rating conditions defined in AHRI 550/590, Table 1.

b. Heating full-load rating conditions are at rating conditions defined in AHRI 550/590, Table 1.

c. For water-cooled heat recovery chillers that have capabilities for heat rejection to a heat recovery condenser and a tower condenser, the COP_{HR} applies to operation at full load with 100% heat recovery (no tower rejection). Units that only have capabilities for partial heat recovery shall meet the requirements of Table 6.8.1-3.

d. Outdoor air entering dry-bulb (db) temperature and wet-bulb (wb) temperature.

e. Source-water entering and leaving water temperature.

f. AHRI ratings are not required for equipment sizes larger than those covered by the test standard.

g. Air-to-water heat pumps that are configured to operate only in heating and not in cooling only need to comply with the minimum heating efficiencies.

h. Units that are both an air-to-water heat pump and an heat recovery chiller are required to comply with either the applicable air source efficiency requirements or the heat recovery chiller requirements but not both.

i. Heat pumps and heat recovery chillers are only required to comply with one of the four leaving heating water temperature criteria. The leaving heater water temperature criteria that is closest to the design leaving water temperature shall be utilized.

C403.3.2.2 Water-cooled centrifugal chilling package. Equipment not designed for operation at AHRI Standard 550/590 test conditions of 44°F (7°C) leaving chilled-water temperature and 2.4 gpm/ton evaporator fluid flow and 85°F (29°C) entering condenser water temperature with 3 gpm/ton (0.054 L/s × kW) condenser water flow shall have maximum full-load kW/ton (FL) and part-load ratings adjusted using Equations 4-7 and 4-8.

Exception: Centrifugal chillers designed to operate outside of these temperature ranges are not regulated by this section.

$FL_{adj} = FL/K_{adj}$ **(Equation 4-7)**

$PLV_{adj} = IPLV/K_{adj}$ **(Equation 4-8)**

Where:

K_{adj}	=	$A \times B$
FL	=	Full-load kW/ton values as specified in Table C403.3.2(7)
FL_{adj}	=	Maximum full-load kW/ton rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions
IPLV	=	Values as specified in Table C403.3.2(7)
PLV_{adj}	=	Maximum NPLV rating, adjusted for nonstandard conditions.
A	=	$0.00000014592 \times (LIFT)^4 –$ $0.0000346496 \times (LIFT)^3 + 0.00314196 \times (LIFT)^2 0.147199 \times LIFT + 3.9302$
B	=	$0.0015 \times L_{vg}^{Evap}$ (°F) + 0.934
LIFT	=	L_{vg}Cond – L_{vg}Evap
L_{vg}^{Cond}	=	Full-load condenser leaving fluid temperature (°F)
L_{vg}^{Evap}	=	Full-load evaporator leaving temperature (°F)

The FLadj and PLVadj values are only applicable for centrifugal chillers meeting all of the following full-load design ranges:

1. Minimum evaporator leaving temperature: 36°F.
2. Maximum condenser leaving temperature: 115°F.
3. LIFT is not less than 20°F and not greater than 80°F.

C403.3.2.3 Positive displacement (air- and water-cooled) chilling package. Equipment with a leaving fluid temperature higher than 32°F (0°C) and water-cooled positive displacement chilling packages with a condenser leaving fluid temperature below 115°F (46°C) shall meet the requirements of Table C403.3.2(7) when tested or certified with water at standard rating conditions, in accordance with the referenced test procedure.

C403.3.2.4 Packaged and split system electric heating and cooling equipment. Packaged and split system electric equipment providing both heating and cooling, and cooling-only equipment with electric heat in the main supply duct before VAV boxes, in each case with a total cooling capacity greater than 6,000 Btu/h shall be a heat pump.

Exception: Unstaffed equipment shelters or cabinets used solely for personal wireless service facilities.

C403.3.2.5 Humidification. If an air economizer is required on a cooling system for which humidification equipment is to be provided to maintain minimum indoor humidity levels, then the humidifier shall be of the adiabatic type (direct evaporative media or fog atomization type).

Exceptions:

1. Health care facilities licensed by the state where Chapter 246-320 or 246-330 WAC requires steam injection humidifiers in duct work downstream of final filters.
2. Systems with water economizer.
3. 100% outside air systems with no provisions for air recirculation to the central supply fan.
4. Nonadiabatic humidifiers cumulatively serving no more than 10% of a building's air economizer capacity as measured in cfm. This refers to the system cfm serving rooms with stand-alone or duct mounted humidifiers.

C403.3.3 Hot gas bypass limitation. Cooling systems shall not use hot gas bypass or other evaporator pressure control systems unless the system is designed with multiple steps of unloading or continuous capacity modulation. The capacity of the hot gas bypass shall be limited as indicated in Table C403.3.3, as limited by Section C403.5.1.

TABLE C403.3.3
MAXIMUM HOT GAS BYPASS CAPACITY

RATED CAPACITY	MAXIMUM HOT GAS BYPASS CAPACITY (% of total capacity)
≤ 240,000 Btu/h	50
> 240,000 Btu/h	25

For SI: 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W.

C403.3.4 Boiler turndown. *Boiler systems* with design input of greater than 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW) shall comply with the turndown ratio specified in Table C403.3.4.

The system turndown requirement shall be met through the use of multiple single input boilers, one or more *modulating boilers* or a combination of single input and modulating boilers.

TABLE C403.3.4
BOILER TURNDOWN

Boiler System Design Input (Btu/h)	Minimum Turndown Ratio
≥ 1,000,000 and less than or equal to 5,000,000	3 to 1
> 5,000,000 and less than or equal to 10,000,000	4 to 1
> 10,000,000	5 to 1

C403.3.5 Dedicated outdoor air systems (DOAS). For buildings with occupancies as shown in Table C403.3.5, outdoor air shall be provided to each occupied space by a dedicated outdoor air system (DOAS) which delivers 100 percent outdoor air without requiring operation of the heating and cooling system fans for ventilation air delivery.

Exceptions:

1. Occupied spaces that are not ventilated by a mechanical ventilation system and are only ventilated by a natural ventilation system in accordance with Section 402 of the *International Mechanical Code*.
2. High efficiency variable air volume (VAV) systems complying with Section C403.6.10 for occupancy classifications other than Groups A-1, A-2 and A-3 as specified in Table C403.3.5, and high efficiency VAV systems complying with Section C403.12 for occupancy classifications Groups A-1, A-2 and A-3 as specified in Table C403.3.5. This exception shall not be used as a substitution for a DOAS per Section C406.6.
3. Spaces that are within building types not subject to the requirements of Section C403.3.5, and that qualify as accessory occupancies according to Section 508.2 of the International Building Code, are not required to comply with this section.

TABLE C403.3.5
OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATIONS REQUIRING DOAS

Occupancy Classification[a]	Inclusions	Exempted
A-1	All occupancies not specifically exempted	Television and radio studios
A-2	Casinos (gaming area)	All other A-2 occupancies
A-3	Lecture halls, community halls, exhibition halls, gymnasiums, courtrooms, libraries, places of religious worship	All other A-3 occupancies
A-4, A-5		All occupancies excluded
B	All occupancies not specifically exempted	Food processing establishments including commercial kitchens, restaurants, cafeterias; laboratories for testing and research; data processing facilities and telephone exchanges; air traffic control towers; animal hospitals, kennels, pounds; ambulatory care facilities.
F, H, I, R, S, U		All occupancies excluded
E, M	All occupancies included	

a. Occupancy classification from the *International Building Code* Chapter 3.

C403.3.5.1 Energy recovery ventilation with DOAS. The DOAS shall include *energy recovery ventilation.* The energy recovery system shall have a ((~~60 percent minimum sensible recovery effectiveness or have 50~~)) 60 percent enthalpy recovery effectiveness in accordance with Section C403.7.6. For DOAS having a total fan system motor nameplate hp less than 5 hp, total combined fan power shall not exceed 1 W/cfm of outdoor air. For DOAS having a total fan system motor hp greater than or equal to 5 hp, refer to fan power limitations of Section C403.8.1. This fan power restriction applies to

each dedicated outdoor air unit in the permitted project, but does not include the fan power associated with the zonal heating/cooling equipment. The airflow rate thresholds for energy recovery requirements in Tables C403.7.6(1) and C403.7.6(2) do not apply.

Exceptions:

1. Occupied spaces with all of the following characteristics:
   a. ((~~complying~~)) Complying with Section C403.7.6.1; ((~~,~~))
   b. ((~~served~~)) Served by equipment less than 5000 cfm; ((~~,~~))
   c. ((~~with~~)) With an average occupant load ((~~greater than 25~~)) 15 people or greater per 1000 square feet (93 m^2) of floor area (as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*);
   d. ((~~that~~)) That include demand control ventilation configured to reduce outdoor air by at least 50% below design minimum ventilation rates when the actual occupancy of the space served by the system is less than the design occupancy; and
   e. Smaller than 650 square feet.
2. Systems installed for the sole purpose of providing makeup air for systems exhausting toxic, flammable, paint, or corrosive fumes or dust, dryer exhaust, or commercial kitchen hoods used for collecting and removing grease vapors and smoke.
3. The energy recovery systems for R-1 and R-2 occupancies are permitted to provide 60 percent minimum sensible heat recovery effectiveness in lieu of 60 percent enthalpy recovery effectiveness. The return/exhaust air stream temperature for heat recovery device selection shall be 70°F or as determined by an *approved* calculation procedure.

C403.3.5.2 Heating/cooling system fan controls. Heating and cooling equipment fans, heating and cooling circulation pumps, and terminal unit fans shall cycle off and terminal unit primary cooling air shall be shut off when there is no call for heating or cooling in the *zone.*

Exception: Fans used for heating and cooling using less than 0.12 watts per cfm may operate when space temperatures are within the set point dead band (Section C403.4.1.2) to provide destratification and air mixing in the space.

C403.3.5.3 Decoupled DOAS supply air. The DOAS supply air shall be delivered directly to the occupied space or downstream of the terminal heating and/or cooling coils.

Exceptions:

1. Active chilled beam systems.
2. Sensible only cooling terminal units with pressure independent variable airflow regulating devices limiting the DOAS supply air to the greater of latent load or minimum ventilation requirements.
3. Terminal heating and/or cooling units that comply with the low fan power allowance requirements in the exception of Section C403.3.5.2.

C403.3.5.4 Impracticality. Where the *code official* determines that full compliance with all of the requirements of Section C403.3.5.1 and C403.3.5.2 would be impractical, it is permissible to provide an approved alternate means of compliance that achieves a comparable level of energy efficiency. For the purposes of this section, impractical means that an HVAC system complying with Section C403.3.5 cannot effectively be utilized due to an unusual use or configuration of the building.

C403.3.6 Ventilation for Group R-2 occupancy. For all Group R-2 dwelling and sleeping units, a balanced ventilation system with heat recovery system with minimum 60 percent sensible recovery effectiveness shall provide outdoor air directly to all habitable space. The ventilation system shall allow for the design flow rates to be tested and verified at each habitable space as part of the commissioning process in accordance with Section C408.2.2.

SDCI Informative Note: When an H/ERV (heat recovery ventilator or energy recovery ventilator) that is rated and listed in accordance with HVI 920 is used to comply with the "sensible recovery effectiveness" requirement in Section C403.3.6 or C403.7.6 Exception 2, use the product's Adjusted Sensible Recovery Efficiency (ASRE) at 32°F, as listed in the HVI Section 3 H/ERV Directory. Select the ASRE for a flow rate that is no less than the design flow rate, or interpolate between two listed flow rates. HVI refers to the Home Ventilating Institute.

C403.3.7 Hydronic system flow rate. Chilled water and condenser water piping shall be designed such that the design flow rate in each pipe segment shall not exceed the values listed in Table C403.3.7 for the appropriate total annual hours of operation. Pipe sizes for systems that operate under variable flow conditions (e.g., modulating two-way control valves at coils) and that contain variable speed pump motors are permitted to be selected from the "Variable Flow/Variable Speed" columns. All others shall be selected from the "Other" columns.

Exception: Design flow rates exceeding the values in Table C403.3.7 are permitted in specific sections of pipe if the pipe is not in the critical circuit at design conditions and is not predicted to be in the critical circuit during more than 30 percent of operating hours.

SDCI Informative Note: The flow rates listed here do not consider noise or erosion. Lower flow rates are often recommended for noise sensitive locations.

TABLE C403.3.7
PIPING SYSTEM DESIGN MAXIMUM FLOW RATE IN GPM[1]

Pipe Size (in)	≤ 2000 hours/yr		> 2000 and ≤ 4400 hours/year		> 4400 hours/year	
	Other	Variable Flow/Variable Speed	Other	Variable Flow/Variable Speed	Other	Variable Flow/Variable Speed
2-1/2	120	180	85	130	68	110
3	180	270	140	210	110	170
4	350	530	260	400	210	320
5	410	620	310	470	250	370
6	740	1100	570	860	440	680
8	1200	1800	900	1400	700	1100
10	1800	2700	1300	2000	1000	1600
12	2500	3800	1900	2900	1500	2300

1. There are no requirements for pipe sizes smaller than the minimum shown in the table or larger than the maximum shown in the table.

C403.4 HVAC system controls. HVAC systems shall be provided with controls in accordance with Sections C403.4.1 through C403.4.11 and shall be capable of and configured to implement all required control functions in this code.

C403.4.1 Thermostatic controls. The supply of heating and cooling energy to each *zone* shall be controlled by individual thermostatic controls capable of responding to temperature within the *zone*. Controls in the same *zone* or in neighboring *zones* connected by openings larger than 10 percent of the floor area of either *zone* shall not allow for simultaneous heating and cooling. At a minimum, each floor of a building shall be considered as a separate *zone*. Controls on systems required to have economizers and serving single *zones* shall have multiple cooling stage capability and activate the economizer when appropriate as the first stage of cooling. See Section C403.5 for further economizer requirements. Where humidification or dehumidification or both is provided, at least one humidity control device shall be provided for each humidity control system.

Exceptions:

1. Independent perimeter systems that are designed to offset only building envelope heat losses or gains or both serving one or more perimeter *zones* also served by an interior system provided:
   1.1. The perimeter system includes at least one thermostatic control *zone* for each building exposure having exterior walls facing only one orientation (within +/- 45 degrees) (0.8 rad) for more than 50 contiguous feet (15,240 mm);
   1.2. The perimeter system heating and cooling supply is controlled by a thermostat located within the *zones* served by the system; and
   1.3. Controls are configured to prevent the perimeter system from operating in a different heating or cooling mode from the other equipment within the *zones* or from neighboring *zones* connected by openings larger than 10 percent of the floor area of either *zone*.

((~~2. Any interior *zone* open to a perimeter *zone* shall have set points and dead bands coordinated so that cooling in the interior *zone* shall not operate while the perimeter *zone* is in heating until the interior zone temperature is 5°F (2.8°C) higher than the perimeter *zone* temperature, unless the interior and perimeter *zones* are separated by a partition whose permanent openings are smaller than 10 percent of the perimeter *zone* floor area.~~))

2. Where an interior zone and a perimeter zone are open to each other with permanent openings larger than 10 percent of the floor area of either zone, cooling in the interior zone is permitted to operate at times when the perimeter zone is in heating and the interior zone temperature is at least 5°F (2.8°C) higher than the perimeter zone temperature. For the purposes of this exception, a permanent opening is an opening without doors or other operable closures.
3. Dedicated outdoor air units that provide *ventilation air*, make-up air or *replacement air* for exhaust systems are permitted to be controlled based on supply air temperature. The supply air temperature shall be controlled to a maximum of 65°F (18.3°C) in heating and a minimum of 72°F (22°C) in cooling unless the supply air temperature is being reset based on the status of cooling or heating in the *zones* served or it being reset based on outdoor air temperature.

C403.4.1.1 Heat pump supplementary heat control. ((~~Unitary air-cooled heat pumps shall include microprocessor controls that minimize supplemental heat usage during start-up, set-up, and defrost conditions. These controls shall anticipate need for heat and use compression heating as the first stage of heat. Controls shall indicate when supplemental heating is being used through visual means (e.g., LED indicators). Heat pumps equipped with supplementary heaters shall be installed with controls that prevent supplemental heater operation above 40°F (4.4°C).~~)) Heat pumps equipped with internal electric resistance heaters shall have controls that prevent supplemental heater operation when the heating load can be met by the heat pump alone during both steady-state operation and setback recovery. Supplemental heater operation is permitted during outdoor coil defrost cycles. Heat pumps equipped with supplementary heaters shall comply with all conditions of Section C403.1.4.

Exception: ((~~Packaged terminal heat pumps (PTHPs) of less than 2 tons (24,000 Btu/hr) cooling capacity provided with controls that prevent supplementary heater operation above 40°F.~~)) Heat pumps whose minimum efficiency is regulated by NAECA and whose ratings meet the requirements shown in Table C403.3.2(2) and include all usage of internal electric resistance heating.

C403.4.1.2 Dead band. Where used to control both heating and cooling, *zone* thermostatic controls shall be configured to provide a temperature range or dead band of at least 5°F (2.8°C) within which the supply of heating and cooling energy to the *zone* is shut off or reduced to a minimum.

Exceptions:

1. Thermostats requiring manual changeover between heating and cooling modes.
2. Occupancies or applications requiring precision in indoor temperature control as *approved* by the *code official.*

C403.4.1.3 Set point overlap restriction. Where a *zone* has a separate heating and a separate cooling thermostatic control located within the *zone*, a limit switch, mechanical stop or direct digital control system with software programming shall be configured to prevent the heating set point from exceeding the cooling set point and to maintain a dead band in accordance with Section C403.4.1.2.

C403.4.1.4 Heated or cooled vestibules. The heating system for heated vestibules and air curtains with integral heating shall be provided with controls configured to shut off the source of heating when the outdoor air temperature is greater than 45°F (7°C). Vestibule heating and cooling systems shall be controlled by a thermostat located in the vestibule configured to limit heating to a temperature not greater than 60°F (16°C) and cooling to a temperature not less than 85°F (29°C).

Exceptions:

1. Control of heating or cooling provided by transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.
2. Vestibule heating only systems are permitted to be controlled without an outdoor air temperature lockout when controlled by a thermostat located in the vestibule configured to limit heating to a temperature not greater than 45°F (7°C) where required for freeze protection of piping and sprinkler heads located in the vestibule.

C403.4.1.5 Hot water boiler outdoor temperature setback control. Hot water boilers that supply heat to the building through one- or two-pipe heating systems shall have an outdoor setback control that lowers the boiler water temperature based on the outdoor temperature.

C403.4.1.6 Door switches for HVAC system thermostatic control. Doors that open to the outdoors from a conditioned space must have controls configured to do the following once doors have been open for 5 minutes:

1. Disable the mechanical heating to the *zone* or reset the space heating temperature set point to 55°F or less within 5 minutes of the door open enable signal.
2. Disable the mechanical cooling to the *zone* or reset the space cooling temperature set point to 85°F or more within 5 minutes of the door open enable signal.

Exceptions:

1. Building entrances with vestibules.
2. Alterations to existing buildings.
3. Loading docks.

C403.4.2 Off-hour controls. For all occupancies other than Group R and for *conditioned spaces* other than dwelling units within Group R occupancies, each *zone* shall be provided with thermostatic setback controls that are controlled by either an *automatic* time clock or programmable control system.

Exceptions:

1. *Zones* that will be operated continuously.
2. *Zones* with a full HVAC load demand not exceeding 6,800 Btu/h (2 kW) and having a manual shutoff switch located with *ready access.*

C403.4.2.1 Thermostatic setback. Thermostatic setback controls shall be configured to set back or temporarily operate the system to maintain *zone* temperatures down to 55°F (13°C) or up to 85°F (29°C).

C403.4.2.2 Automatic setback and shutdown. *Automatic* time clock or programmable controls shall be capable of starting and stopping the system for seven different daily schedules per week and retaining their programming and time setting during a loss of power for at least 10 hours. Additionally, the controls shall have a manual override that allows temporary operation of the system for up to 2 hours; a manually operated timer configured to operate the system for up to 2 hours; or an occupancy sensor.

C403.4.2.3 Automatic start and stop. *Automatic* start and stop controls shall be provided for each HVAC system. The *automatic* start controls shall be configured to automatically adjust the daily start time of the HVAC system in order to bring each space to the desired occupied temperature immediately prior to scheduled occupancy. The *automatic* stop controls shall be configured to reduce the HVAC system's heating temperature set point and increase the cooling temperature set point by at least 2°F (1.1°C) before scheduled unoccupied periods based upon the thermal lag and acceptable drift in space temperature that is within comfort limits. At a minimum, the controls shall be a function of the space temperature, occupied and unoccupied temperatures, and the amount of time prior to scheduled occupancy.

C403.4.2.4 Exhaust system off-hour controls. For all occupancies other than Group R, exhaust systems serving spaces within the conditioned envelope shall be controlled by either an *automatic* time clock, thermostatic controls or programmable control system to operate on the same schedule as the HVAC systems providing their make-up air.

Exceptions:

1. Exhaust systems requiring continuous operation.
2. Exhaust systems that are controlled by occupancy sensor control configured with *automatic* on and *automatic* shutoff within 15 minutes after occupants have left the space.

C403.4.2.5 Transfer and destratification fan system off-hour controls. For all occupancies other than Group R, transfer fan or mixing fan systems serving spaces within the conditioned envelope shall be controlled by either an *automatic* time clock, thermostatic controls or programmable control system to operate on the same schedule as the associated HVAC systems.

Exception: Transfer fan and destratification fan systems that are controlled by occupancy sensor control configured with manual on and *automatic* shutoff within 15 minutes after occupants have left the space.

C403.4.3 Hydronic systems controls. The heating of fluids that have been previously mechanically cooled and the cooling of fluids that have been previously mechanically heated shall be limited in accordance with Sections C403.4.3.1 through C403.4.3.3. Hydronic heating systems comprised of multiple-packaged boilers and designed to deliver conditioned water or steam into a common distribution system shall include *automatic* controls configured to sequence operation of the boilers. Hydronic heating systems comprised of a single boiler and greater than 500,000 Btu/h (146,550 W) input design capacity shall include either a multi-staged or modulating burner.

C403.4.3.1 Three-pipe system. Hydronic systems that use a common return system for both hot water and chilled water are prohibited.

C403.4.3.2 Two-pipe changeover system. Systems that use a common distribution system to supply both heated and chilled water shall be designed to allow a dead band between changeover from one mode to the other of at least 15°F (8.3°C) outside air temperatures; be designed to and provided with controls that will allow operation in one mode for at least 4 hours before changing over to the other mode; and be provided with controls that allow heating and cooling supply temperatures at the changeover point to be no more than 30°F (16.7°C) apart.

C403.4.3.3 Hydronic (water loop) heat pump systems. Hydronic heat pump systems shall comply with Sections C403.4.3.3.1 through C403.4.3.3.3.

C403.4.3.3.1 Temperature dead band. Hydronic heat pumps connected to a common heat pump water loop with central devices for heat rejection and heat addition shall have controls that are configured to provide a heat pump water supply temperature dead band of at least 20°F (11.1°C) between initiation of heat rejection and heat addition by the central devices.

Exception: Where a system loop temperature optimization controller is installed and can determine the most efficient operating temperature based on real time conditions of demand and capacity, dead bands of less than 20°F (11°C) shall be permitted.

C403.4.3.3.2 Heat rejection. The following shall apply to hydronic water loop heat pump systems:

1. Where a closed-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, either an *automatic* valve shall be installed to bypass the flow of water around the closed-circuit cooling tower, except for the minimum flow necessary for freeze protection. Flow controls for freeze protection shall not allow water through the closed-circuit cooling tower when outdoor temperatures are above the freezing point of the glycol/water solution, i.e. 32°F (0°C) for 100 percent water applications, and 18°F (-7.8°C) for 20 percent by mass propylene glycol solution.
2. Where an open-circuit cooling tower is used directly in the heat pump loop, an *automatic* valve shall be installed to bypass all heat pump water flow around the open-circuit cooling tower.

3. Where an open-circuit cooling tower is used in conjunction with a separate heat exchanger to isolate the open-circuit cooling tower from the heat pump loop, heat loss shall be controlled by shutting down the circulation pump on the cooling tower loop.

Exception: Where it can be demonstrated that a heat pump system will be required to reject heat throughout the year.

C403.4.3.3.3 Isolation valve. Each hydronic heat pump on the hydronic system having a total pump system power exceeding 10 horsepower (hp) (7.5 kW) shall have a two-way (but not three-way) valve. For the purposes of this section, pump system power is the sum of the nominal power demand (i.e., nameplate horsepower at nominal motor efficiency) of motors of all pumps that are required to operate at design conditions to supply fluid from the heating or cooling source to all heat transfer devices (e.g., coils, heat exchanger) and return it to the source. This converts the system into a variable flow system and, as such, the primary circulation pumps shall comply with the variable flow requirements in Section C403.4.6.

C403.4.4 Part load controls. Hydronic systems greater than or equal to 300,000 Btu/h (88 kW) in design output capacity supplying heated or chilled water to comfort conditioning systems shall include controls that are configured to:

1. Automatically reset the supply-water temperatures in response to varying building heating and cooling demand using coil valve position, zone-return water temperature or outdoor air temperature. The temperature shall be reset by not less than 25 percent of the design supply-to-return water temperature difference.

   Exception: Hydronic systems serving hydronic heat pumps.

2. Automatically vary fluid flow for hydronic systems with a combined pump motor capacity of 2 hp or larger with three or more control valves or other devices by reducing the system design flow rate by not less than 50 percent or the maximum reduction allowed by the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment by valves that modulate or step open and close, or pumps that modulate or turn on and off as a function of load.
3. Automatically vary pump flow on heating water systems, chilled-water systems and heat rejection loops serving water-cooled unitary air conditioners as follows:
   3.1. Where pumps operate continuously or operate based on a time schedule, pumps with nominal output motor power of 2 hp or more shall have a variable speed drive.
   3.2. Where pumps have *automatic* direct digital control configured to operate pumps only when *zone* heating or cooling is required, a variable speed drive shall be provided for pumps with motors having the same or greater nominal output power indicated in Table C403.4.4 based on the climate zone and system served.
4. Where a variable speed drive is required by Item 3 of this Section, pump motor power input shall be not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design water flow. Pump flow shall be controlled to maintain one control valve nearly wide open or to satisfy the minimum differential pressure.

Exceptions:

1. Supply-water temperature reset is not required for chilled-water systems supplied by off-site district chilled water or chilled water from ice storage systems.
2. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated coil circulation pumps where needed for freeze protection.
3. Variable pump flow is not required on dedicated equipment circulation pumps where configured in primary/secondary design to provide the minimum flow requirements of the equipment manufacturer for proper operation of equipment.
4. Variable speed drives are not required on heating water pumps where more than 50 percent of annual heat is generated by an electric boiler.

TABLE C403.4.4
VARIABLE SPEED DRIVE (VSD) REQUIREMENTS FOR DEMAND-CONTROLLED PUMPS

Climate Zones 4c, 5b	VSD Required for Motors with Rated Output of at Least
Heating Water Pumps	≥ 7.5 hp
Chilled water and Heat Rejection Loop Pumps	≥ 7.5 hp

C403.4.5 Pump isolation. Chilled water plants including more than one chiller shall be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the chiller plant when a chiller is shut down and automatically shut off flow to chillers that are shut down. Chillers piped in series for the purpose of increased temperature differential shall be considered as one chiller.

Boiler systems including more than one boiler shall be capable of and configured to reduce flow automatically through the boiler system when a boiler is shut down.

C403.4.6 Variable flow controls. Individual pumps required by this code to have variable speed control shall be controlled in one of the following manners:

1. For systems having a combined pump motor horsepower less than or equal to 20 hp (15 kW) and without direct digital control of individual coils, pump speed shall be a function of either:
    1.1. Required differential pressure; or
    1.2. Reset directly based on zone hydronic demand, or other zone load indicators; or
    1.3. Reset directly based on pump power and pump differential pressure; or
    1.4. Reset directly by an integral controller based on the relationship between variable speed controller frequency and power.
2. For systems having a combined pump motor horsepower that exceeds 20 hp (15 kW) or smaller systems with direct digital control, pump speed shall be a function of either:
    2.1. The static pressure set point as reset based on the valve requiring the most pressure; or
    2.2. Directly controlled based on zone hydronic demand; or
    2.3. Reset directly by an integral controller based on the relationship between variable speed controller frequency and power.

C403.4.7 Combustion heating equipment controls. Combustion heating equipment with a capacity over 225,000 Btu/h shall have modulating or staged combustion control.

Exceptions:

1. Boilers.
2. Radiant heaters.

C403.4.7.1 Combustion decorative vented appliance, combustion fireplace and fire pit controls. Combustion decorative vented appliances, combustion fireplaces and fire pits shall be equipped with local controls to limit operation to a maximum duration of one hour without override hold capability or shall be controlled by occupancy sensor control configured with manual on and automatic shutoff within 15 minutes after occupants have left the space.

C403.4.8 Group R-1 hotel/motel guestrooms. See Section C403.7.4.

C403.4.9 Group R-2 and R-3 dwelling units. The primary space conditioning system within each dwelling unit shall be provided with at least one programmable thermostat for the regulation of space temperature. The thermostat shall allow for, at a minimum, a 5-2 programmable schedule (weekdays/weekends) and be capable of providing at least two programmable setback periods per day.

Each additional system provided within the dwelling unit shall be provided with at least one adjustable thermostat for the regulation of temperature.

Exceptions:

1. Systems controlled by an occupant sensor that is configured to shut the system off when no occupant is sensed for a period of up to 30 minutes.
2. Systems controlled solely by a manually operated timer configured to operate the system for no more than two hours.
3. Ductless heat pumps.

Each thermostat shall be capable of being set by adjustment or selection of sensors and configured as follows:

1. When used to control heating only: 55°F to 75°F.
2. When used to control cooling only: 70°F to 85°F.
3. All other: 55°F to 85°F with an adjustable dead band configured to at least 5°F in accordance with Section C403.4.1.2.

C403.4.10 Group R-2 sleeping units. The primary space conditioning system within each sleeping unit shall be provided with at least one programmable thermostat for the regulation of space temperature. The thermostat shall allow for, at a minimum, a 5-2 programmable schedule (weekdays/weekends) and be capable of providing at least two programmable setback periods per day.

Each additional system provided within the sleeping unit shall be provided with at least one adjustable thermostat for the regulation of temperature.

Exceptions:

1. Systems controlled by an occupant sensor that is configured to shut the system off when no occupant is sensed for a period of up to 30 minutes.
2. Systems controlled solely by a manually operated timer configured to operate the system for no more than two hours.
3. *Zones* with a full HVAC load demand not exceeding 3,400 Btu/h (1 kW) and having a manual shutoff switch located with ready access.

4. Ductless heat pumps.

Each thermostat shall be capable of being set by adjustment or selection of sensors and configured as follows:

1. When used to control heating only: 55°F to 75°F;
2. When used to control cooling only: 70°F to 85°F;
3. All other: 55°F to 85°F with an adjustable dead band configured to at least 5°F in accordance with Section C403.4.1.2.

C403.4.11 Direct digital control systems. Direct digital control (DDC) shall be required as specified in Sections C403.4.11.1 through C403.4.11.3.

C403.4.11.1 DDC applications. DDC shall be provided in the applications and qualifications listed in Table C403.4.11.1.

TABLE C403.4.11.1
DDC APPLICATIONS AND QUALIFICATIONS

Building Status	Application	Qualifications
New Building	Air-handling system and all zones served by the system	All air-handling systems in buildings with building cooling capacity greater than 780,000 Btu/h
	Air-handling system and all zones served by the system	Individual systems supplying more than three zones and with fan system bhp of 10 hp and larger
	Chilled-water plant and all coils and terminal units served by the system	Individual plants supplying more than three zones and with design cooling capacity of 300,000 Btu/h and larger
	Hot-water plant and all coils and terminal units served by the system	Individual plants supplying more than three zones and with design heating capacity of 300,000 Btu/h and larger
Alteration or addition	Zone terminal units such as VAV box	Where existing zones served by the same air-handling, chilled-water, or hot-water system have DDC
	Air-handling system or fan coil	Where existing air-handling system(s) and fan coil(s) served by the same chilled- or hot-water plant have DDC
	New air-handling system and all new zones served by the system	Individual systems with fan system bhp 10 hp and larger and supplying more than three zones and more than 75% of zones are new
	New or upgraded chilled-water plant	Where all chillers are new and plant design cooling capacity is 300,000 Btu/h and larger
	New or upgraded hot-water plant	Where all boilers are new and plant design heating capacity is 300,000 Btu/h and larger

C403.4.11.2 DDC controls. Where DDC is required by Section C403.4.11.1, the DDC system shall be capable of all of the following, as required to provide the system and zone control logic required in Sections C403.2, C403.4.3, C403.5, and C403.6.8:

1. Monitoring zone and system demand for fan pressure, pump pressure, heating and cooling.
2. Transferring zone and system demand information from zones to air distribution system controllers and from air distribution systems to heating and cooling plant controllers.

C403.4.11.3 DDC display. Where DDC is required by Section C403.4.11.1 for new buildings, the DDC system shall be capable of trending and graphically displaying input and output points.

C403.4.12 Pressure independent control valves. Where design flow rate of heating water and chilled water coils is 10 GPM or higher, modulating pressure independent control valves shall be provided.

C403.5 Economizers. Air economizers shall be provided on all new cooling systems including those serving computer server rooms, electronic equipment, radio equipment, and telephone switchgear. Economizers shall comply with Sections C403.5.1 through C403.5.5.

Exception: Economizers are not required for the systems listed below:

1. Cooling systems not installed outdoors nor in a mechanical room adjacent to outdoors and installed in conjunction with DOAS complying with Section C403.3.5 and serving only spaces with year-round cooling loads from lights and equipment of less than 5 watts per square foot.
2. Unitary or packaged systems serving one zone with dehumidification ((~~that affect other systems so as to~~)) where an economizer would increase the overall building energy consumption. New humidification equipment shall comply with Section C403.3.2.5.
3. Unitary or packaged systems serving one zone where the cooling efficiency meets or exceeds the efficiency requirements in Table C403.5(3).

4. Equipment serving chilled beams and chilled ceiling space cooling systems only which are provided with a water economizer meeting the requirements of Section C403.5.4.
5. For Group R occupancies, cooling units installed outdoors or in a mechanical room adjacent to outdoors with a total cooling capacity less than 20,000 Btu/h and other cooling units with a total cooling capacity less than 54,000 Btu/h provided that these are high-efficiency cooling equipment with IEER, CEER, SEER, and EER values more than 15 percent higher than minimum efficiencies listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through (3), in the appropriate size category, using the same test procedures. Equipment shall be listed in the appropriate certification program to qualify for this exception. For split systems, compliance is based on the cooling capacity of individual fan coil units.
6. Equipment used to cool *Controlled Plant Growth Environments* provided these are high-efficiency cooling equipment with SEER, EER and IEER values a minimum of 20 percent greater than the values listed in Tables C403.3.2(1), (3) and (7).
7. Equipment serving a space with year-round cooling loads from lights and equipment of 5 watts per square foot or greater complying with the following criteria:
   7.1. Equipment serving the space utilizes chilled water as the cooling source; and
   7.2. The chilled water plant includes a condenser heat recovery system that meets the requirements of Section C403.9.2.1 or the building and water-cooled system meets the following requirements:
      7.2.1. A minimum of 90 percent (capacity-weighted) of the building space heat is provided by hydronic heating water.
      7.2.2. Chilled water plant includes a heat recovery chiller or water-to-water heat pump capable of rejecting heat from the chilled water system to the hydronic heating equipment capacity.
      7.2.3. Heat recovery chillers shall have a minimum COP of 7.0 when providing heating and cooling water simultaneously.
8. Water-cooled equipment served by systems meeting the requirements of Section C403.9.2.4, Condenser heat recovery.
9. Dedicated outdoor air systems that include energy recovery as required by Section C403.7.6 but that do not include mechanical cooling.
10. Dedicated outdoor air systems not required by Section C403.7.6 to include energy recovery that modulate the supply airflow to provide only the minimum outdoor air required by Section C403.2.2.1 for ventilation, exhaust air make-up, or other process air delivery.
11. Equipment used to cool any dedicated server room, electronic equipment room, elevator machine room or telecom switch room provided the system complies with Option a, b, ((~~or~~)) c, d or e in ((~~the table~~)) Table C403.5(11) below. The total cooling capacity of all fan systems qualifying under this exception without economizers shall not exceed 240,000 Btu/h per building or 10 percent of its air economizer capacity, whichever is greater. This exception shall not be used for Total Building Performance or Target Performance Path compliance.
12. Medical and laboratory equipment that is directly water-cooled and is not dependent upon space air temperature.

TABLE C403.5(11)
SERVER ROOM, ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT ROOM OR TELECOM ROOM COOLING EQUIPMENT

	Equipment Type	Higher Equipment Efficiency	Part-Load Control	Economizer
Option a	Tables C403.3.2(1) and C403.3.2(2)[a]	+15%[b]	Required over 85,000 Btu/h[c]	None Required
Option b	Tables C403.3.2(1) and C403.3.2(2)[a]	+5%[d]	Required over 85,000 Btu/h[c]	Water-side Economizer[e]
Option c	ASHRAE Standard 127[f]	+0%[g]	Required over 85,000 Btu/h[c]	Water-side Economizer[e]
Option d	Table C403.2.3(7)[h]	+25%[i]	Required for all chillers[j]	None Required
Option e	Table C403.2.3(7)[h]	+10/15%[k]	Required over 85,000 Btu/h[c]	Dedicated waterside economizer[e]

((~~Notes for Exception 11~~)) Footnotes for Table C403.5(11):

a. For a system where all of the cooling equipment is subject to the AHRI standards listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) and C403.3.2(2), the system shall comply with ((~~all of the following~~)) the higher equipment efficiency, part-load control and economizer requirements of the row in which this footnote is located, including the associated footnotes (note that if the system contains any cooling equipment that exceeds the capacity limits in Table C403.3.2(1) or C403.3.2(2), or if the system contains any cooling equipment that is not included in Table C403.3.2(1) or C403.3.2(2), then the system is not allowed to use this option).

b. The cooling equipment shall have an SEER/EER value and an IEER/IPLV value that ((~~is~~)) are each a minimum of 15 percent greater than the value listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) and C403.3.2(2).

c. For units with a total cooling capacity over 85,000 Btu/h, the system shall utilize part-load capacity control schemes that are able to modulate to a part-load capacity of 50 percent of the load or less that results in the compressor operating at the same or higher EER at part loads than at full load (e.g., minimum of two-stages of compressor unloading such as cylinder unloading, two-stage scrolls, dual tandem scrolls, but hot gas bypass is not credited as a compressor unloading system).

d. The cooling equipment shall have an SEER/EER value and an IEER/IPLV value that ((~~is~~)) are each a minimum of 5 percent greater than the value listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) and C403.3.2(2).

e. The system shall include a water economizer in lieu of air economizer. Water economizers shall meet the requirements of Sections C403.5.1 and C403.5.2 and be capable of providing the total concurrent cooling load served by the connected terminal equipment lacking airside economizer, at outside air temperatures of 50°F dry-bulb/45°F wet-bulb and below. For this calculation, all factors including solar and internal load shall be the same as those used for peak load calculations, except for the outside temperatures. The equipment shall be served by a dedicated condenser water system unless a non-dedicated condenser water system exists that can provide appropriate water temperatures during hours when water-side economizer cooling is available.

f. For a system where all cooling equipment is subject to ASHRAE Standard 127, the system shall comply with the higher equipment efficiency, part-load control and economizer requirements of the row in which this footnote is located, including the associated footnotes.

g. The cooling equipment subject to ASHRAE Standard 127 shall have an ((~~EER value and an IPLV~~)) SCOP value that is ((~~equal or~~)) a minimum of 10 percent greater than the value listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) and C403.3.2(2) (1.10 x values in these tables) when determined in accordance with the rating conditions in ASHRAE Standard 127 (i.e., not the rating conditions in AHRI Standard 210/240 or 340/360). This information shall be provided by an independent third party.

h. For a system with chillers subject to the AHRI standards listed in Table C403.3.2(7) (e.g., a chilled water system with fan coil units), the system shall comply with the higher equipment efficiency, part-load control and economizer requirements of the row in which this footnote is located, including the associated footnotes.

i. The cooling equipment shall have an full-load EER value and an IPLV value that is a minimum of 25 percent greater than the value listed in Table C403.3.2(7) (1.25 x value in Table C403.3.2(7) or a full-load and IPLV kW/ton that is at least 25 percent lower than the value listed in Table C403.3.2(7) (0.75 x value in Table C403.3.2(7)).

j. For all chillers, the system shall utilize part-load capacity control schemes that are able to modulate to a part-load capacity of 50 percent of the load or less and that result in the compressor operating at the same or higher EER at part loads than at full load (e.g., minimum of two-stages of compressor unloading such as cylinder unloading, two-stage scrolls, or dual tandem scrolls, but hot gas bypass is not a qualifying compressor unloading system).

k. For air-cooled chillers, the cooling equipment shall have an IPLV EER value that is a minimum of 10 percent greater than the IPLV EER value listed in Table C403.3.2(7) (1.10 x values in Table C403.3.2(7). For water-cooled chillers, the cooling equipment shall have an IPLV kW/ton that is at least 15 percent lower than the IPLV kW/ton value listed in Table C403.3.2(7) (0.85 x values in Table C403.3.2(7)).

TABLE C403.5(3)
EQUIPMENT EFFICIENCY PERFORMANCE EXCEPTION FOR ECONOMIZERS

Climate Zone	Efficiency Improvement[a]
4C	64%
5B	59%

a. If a unit is rated with an IPLV, IEER or SEER then to eliminate the required air or water economizer, the minimum cooling efficiency of the HVAC unit must be increased by the percentage shown. If the HVAC unit is only rated with a full load metric like EER or COP cooling, then these must be increased by the percentage shown.

C403.5.1 Integrated economizer control. Economizer systems shall be integrated with the mechanical cooling system and be configured to provide partial cooling even where additional mechanical cooling is required to provide the remainder of the cooling load. Controls shall not be capable of creating a false load in the mechanical cooling system by limiting or disabling the economizer or any other means, such as hot gas bypass, except at the lowest stage of mechanical cooling.

Units that include an air economizer shall comply with the following:

1. Unit controls shall have the mechanical cooling capacity control interlocked with the air economizer controls such that the outdoor air damper is at the 100 percent open position when mechanical cooling is on and the outdoor air damper does not begin to close to prevent coil freezing due to minimum compressor run time until the leaving air temperature is less than 45°F (7°C).
2. Direct expansion (DX) units with cooling capacity 65,000 Btu/H (19 kW) or greater of rated capacity shall comply with the following:
    2.1. DX units that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on occupied space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of mechanical cooling capacity.
    2.2. Other DX units, including those that control space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space, shall be in accordance with Table C403.5.1.

TABLE C403.5.1
DX COOLING STAGE REQUIREMENTS FOR MODULATING AIRFLOW UNITS

Rating Capacity	Minimum Number of Mechanical Cooling Stages	Minimum Compressor Displacement[a]
≥ 65,000 Btu/h and < 240,000 Btu/h	3 stages	≤ 35% of full load
≥ 240,000 Btu/h	4 stages	≤ 25% full load

For SI: 1 Btu/h = 0.2931 W

a. For *mechanical cooling* stage control that does not use variable compressor displacement, the percent displacement shall be equivalent to the mechanical cooling capacity reduction evaluated at the full load rating conditions for the compressor.

C403.5.2 Economizer heating system impact. HVAC system design and economizer controls shall be such that economizer operation does not increase building heating energy use during normal operation.

Exception: Economizers on VAV systems that cause *zone* level heating to increase due to a reduction in supply air temperature.

C403.5.3 Air economizers. Air economizers shall comply with Sections C403.5.3.1 through C403.5.3.5.

C403.5.3.1 Design capacity. Air economizer systems shall be configured to modulate *outdoor air* and return air dampers to provide up to 100 percent of the design supply air quantity as *outdoor air* for cooling.

C403.5.3.2 Control signal. Economizer controls and dampers shall be configured to sequence the dampers with mechanical cooling equipment and shall not be controlled by only mixed air temperature. Air economizers on systems with cooling capacity greater than 65,000 Btu/h shall be configured to provide partial cooling even when additional mechanical cooling is required to meet the remainder of the cooling load.

Exception: The use of mixed air temperature limit control shall be permitted for systems that are both controlled from space temperature (such as single *zone* systems) and having cooling capacity less than 65,000 Btu/h.

C403.5.3.3 High-limit shutoff. Air economizers shall be configured to automatically reduce *outdoor air* intake to the design minimum outdoor air quantity when outdoor air intake will no longer reduce cooling energy usage. High-limit shutoff control types shall be chosen from Table C403.5.3.3. High-limit shutoff control settings for these control types shall be those specified in Table C403.5.3.3.

TABLE C403.5.3.3
HIGH-LIMIT SHUTOFF CONTROL SETTING FOR AIR ECONOMIZERS[b]

DEVICE TYPE	REQUIRED HIGH LIMIT (Economizer Off When):		REQUIRED HIGH LIMIT FOR CYCLING FANS[c] (Economizer Off When):	
	EQUATION	DESCRIPTION	EQUATION	DESCRIPTION
Fixed dry bulb	$T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 75°F	$T_{OA} > 70°F$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds 70°F
Differential dry bulb	$T_{OA} > T_{RA}$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature	$T_{OA} > (T_{RA} - 5)$	Outdoor air temperature exceeds return air temperature - 5°F
Fixed enthalpy with fixed dry-bulb temperatures	$h_{OA} > 28$ Btu/lb[a] or $T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds 28 Btu/lb of dry air[a] or outdoor temperature exceeds 75°F	$h_{OA} > 26$ Btu/lb[a] or $T_{OA} > 70°F$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds 26 Btu/lb of dry air[d] or outdoor temperature exceeds 70°F
Differential enthalpy with fixed dry-bulb temperatures	$h_{OA} > h_{RA}$ or $T_{OA} > 75°F$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds return air enthalpy or outdoor temperature exceeds 75°F	$h_{OA} > (h_{RA} - 2)$ or $T_{OA} > 70°F$	Outdoor air enthalpy exceeds return air enthalpy or outdoor air temperature exceeds 70°F

For SI: °C = (°F - 32) × 5/9, 1 Btu/lb = 2.33 kJ/kg.

a. At altitudes substantially different than sea level, the Fixed Enthalpy limit shall be set to the enthalpy value at 75°F and 50-percent relative humidity. As an example, at approximately 6,000 feet elevation the fixed enthalpy limit is approximately 30.7 Btu/lb.

b. Devices with selectable set point shall be capable of being set to within 2°F and 2 Btu/lb of the set point listed.

c. Where fans cycle on only to provide heating and cooling, limits are adjusted lower to compensate for fan energy use in economizer mode.

d. For cycling fans, at altitudes substantially different than sea level, the fixed enthalpy limit shall be set to the enthalpy value at 70°F and 50% relative humidity.

C403.5.3.4 Relief of excess outdoor air. Systems shall be capable of relieving excess *outdoor air* during air economizer operation to prevent over-pressurizing the building. The relief air outlet shall be located to avoid recirculation into the building.

C403.5.3.5 Economizer dampers. Return, exhaust/relief and outdoor air dampers used in economizers shall comply with Section C403.7.8.

C403.5.4 Water-side economizers. Water-side economizers shall comply with Sections C403.5.4.1 and C403.5.4.2.

C403.5.4.1 Design capacity. Water economizer systems shall be configured to cool supply air by indirect evaporation and providing up to 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at *outdoor air* temperatures of not greater than 50°F dry-bulb (10°C dry-bulb)/45°F wet-bulb (7.2°C wet-bulb.

Exception: Systems where dehumidification requirements cannot be met using outdoor air temperatures of 50°F dry-bulb (10°C dry-bulb)/45°F wet-bulb (7.2°C wet-bulb) and where 100 percent of the expected system cooling load at 45°F dry-bulb (7.2°C dry-bulb)/40°F wet-bulb (4.5°C wet-bulb) is met with evaporative water economizers.

C403.5.4.2 Maximum pressure drop. Precooling coils and water-to-water heat exchangers used as part of a water economizer system shall either have a water-side pressure drop of less than 15 feet (4572 mm) of water or a secondary loop shall be created so that the coil or heat exchanger pressure drop is not seen by the circulating pumps when the system is in the normal cooling (noneconomizer) mode.

C403.5.5 Economizer fault detection and diagnostics (FDD). Air-cooled unitary direct-expansion units with a cooling capacity of 54,000 Btu/h or greater listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(3) that are equipped with an economizer in accordance with Section C403.5 shall include a fault detection and diagnostics (FDD) system complying with the following:

1. The following temperature sensors shall be permanently installed to monitor system operation:
    1.1. Outside air.

1.2. Supply air.
1.3. Return air.

2. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of ±2°F (1.1°C) over the range of 40°F to 80°F (4°C to 26.7°C).
3. Refrigerant pressure sensors, where used, shall have an accuracy of ±3 percent of full scale.
4. The unit controller shall be configured to provide system status by indicating the following:
   4.1. Free cooling available.
   4.2. Economizer enabled.
   4.3. Compressor enabled.
   4.4. Heating enabled.
   4.5. Mixed air low limit cycle active.
   4.6. The current value of each sensor.
5. The unit controller shall be capable of manually initiating each operating mode so that the operation of compressors, economizers, fans and the heating system can be independently tested and verified.
6. The unit shall be configured to report faults to a fault management application available for access by day-to-day operating or service personnel or annunciated locally on zone thermostats.
7. The FDD system shall be configured to detect the following faults:
   7.1. Air temperature sensor failure/fault.
   7.2. Not economizing when the unit should be economizing.
   7.3. Economizing when the unit should not be economizing.
   7.4. Damper not modulating.
   7.5. Excess outdoor air.

C403.6 Requirements for mechanical systems serving multiple zones. Sections C403.6.1 through C403.6.10 shall apply to mechanical systems serving multiple zones.

C403.6.1 Variable air volume (VAV) and multiple zone systems. Supply air systems serving multiple zones shall be VAV systems that have zone controls configured to reduce the volume of air that is reheated, recooled or mixed in each *zone* to one of the following:

1. Twenty percent of the zone design peak supply for systems with DDC and thirty percent of the maximum supply air for other systems.
2. Systems with DDC where items 2.1 through 2.3 apply.
   2.1 The airflow rate in the dead band between heating and cooling does not exceed 20 percent of the zone design peak supply rate or higher allowed rates under items 3, 4 or 5 of this section.
   2.2 The first stage of heating modulates the zone supply air temperature set point up to a maximum set point while the airflow is maintained at the dead band flow rate.
   2.3 The second stage of heating modulates the airflow rate from the dead band flow rate up to the heating maximum flow rate that is less than 50 percent of the zone design peak supply rate.
3. The outdoor airflow rate required to meet the minimum ventilation requirements of Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code*.
4. Any higher rate that can be demonstrated to reduce overall system annual energy use by offsetting reheat/recool energy losses through a reduction in outdoor air intake for the system as *approved* by the *code official*.
5. The airflow rate required to comply with applicable codes or accreditation standards such as pressure relationships or minimum air change rates.

   Exception: The following individual zones or entire air distribution systems are exempted from the requirement for VAV control:

   1. *Zones* or supply air systems where not less than 75 percent of the energy for reheating or for providing warm air in mixing systems is provided from a site-recovered source, including condenser heat.
   2. Systems that prevent reheating, recooling, mixing or simultaneous supply of air that has been previously cooled, either mechanically or through the use of economizer systems, and air that has been previously mechanically heated.
   3. Ventilation systems complying with Section C403.3.5, DOAS, with ventilation rates complying with Section C403.2.2.

C403.6.2 Single duct variable air volume (VAV) systems, terminal devices. Single duct VAV systems shall use terminal devices capable of and configured to reduce the supply of primary supply air before reheating or recooling takes place.

C403.6.3 Dual duct and mixing VAV systems, terminal devices. Systems that have one warm air duct and one cool air duct shall use terminal devices which are capable of and configured to reduce the flow from one duct to a minimum before mixing of air from the other duct takes place.

C403.6.4 Supply-air temperature reset controls. Multiple *zone* HVAC systems shall include controls that automatically reset the supply-air temperature in response to representative building loads, or to outdoor air temperature. The controls shall be configured to reset the supply air temperature at least 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room air temperature.

Exceptions:

1. Systems that prevent reheating, recooling or mixing of heated and cooled supply air.
2. Seventy-five percent (75%) of the energy for reheating is from a site-recovered source.
3. Zones with peak supply air quantities of 300 cfm (142 L/s) or less.

C403.6.5 Multiple-zone VAV system ventilation optimization control. Multiple-zone VAV systems with direct digital control of individual zone boxes reporting to a central control panel shall have *automatic* controls configured to reduce outdoor air intake flow below design rates in response to changes in system ventilation efficiency (E_v) as defined by the *International Mechanical Code.*

Exceptions:

1. VAV systems with zonal transfer fans that recirculate air from other zones without directly mixing it with outdoor air, dual-duct dual-fan VAV systems, and VAV systems with fan-powered terminal units.
2. Systems where total design exhaust airflow is more than 70 percent of total design outdoor air intake flow requirements.

C403.6.6 Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminal control. Parallel-flow fan-powered VAV air terminals shall have *automatic* controls configured to:

1. Turn off the terminal fan except when space heating is required or where required for ventilation.
2. Turn on the terminal fan as the first stage of heating before the heating coil is activated.
3. During heating for warmup or setback temperature control, either:
    3.1. Operate the terminal fan and heating coil without primary air.
    3.2. Reverse the terminal damper logic and provide heating from the central air handler by primary air.

C403.6.7 Hydronic and multiple-zone HVAC system controls and equipment. Hydronic and multiple-zone HVAC system controls and equipment shall comply with this section.

For buildings with a total equipment cooling capacity of 300 tons and above, the equipment shall comply with one of the following:

1. No one unit shall have a cooling capacity of more than 2/3 of the total installed cooling equipment capacity.
2. The equipment shall have a variable speed drive.
3. The equipment shall have multiple compressors.

C403.6.8 Set points for direct digital control. For systems with direct digital control of individual *zones* reporting to the central control panel, the static pressure set point shall be reset based on the *zone* requiring the most pressure. In such cases, the set point is reset lower until one zone damper is nearly wide open. The direct digital controls shall be capable of monitoring zone damper positions or shall have an alternative method of indicating the need for static pressure that is configured to provide all of the following:

1. Automatically detecting any zone that excessively drives the reset logic.
2. Generating an alarm to the system operational location.
3. Allowing an operator to readily remove one or more zones from the reset algorithm.

C403.6.9 Static pressure sensor location. Static pressure sensors used to control VAV fans shall be located such that the controller set point is no greater than 1.2 inches w.c. (299 Pa). Where this results in one or more sensors being located downstream of major duct splits, not less than one sensor shall be located on each major branch to ensure that static pressure can be maintained in each branch.

Exception: Systems complying with Section C403.6.8.

C403.6.10 High efficiency variable air volume (VAV) systems. For HVAC systems subject to the requirements of Section C403.3.5 but utilizing Exception 2 of that section, a high efficiency multiple-zone VAV system may be provided without a separate parallel DOAS when the system is designed, installed, and configured to comply with all of the following criteria. (((~~this~~)) This exception shall not be used as a substitution for a DOAS per Section C406.6 or C406.7:

1. Each VAV system must serve a minimum of 3,000 square feet (278.7 m^2) and have a minimum of five VAV zones.

2. The VAV systems are provided with airside economizer per Section C403.5 without exceptions.
3. A direct-digital control (DDC) system is provided to control the VAV air handling units and associated terminal units per Section C403.4.11 regardless of sizing thresholds of Table C403.4.11.1.
4. Multiple-zone VAV systems with a minimum outdoor air requirement of 2,500 cfm (1180 L/s) or greater shall be equipped with a device capable of measuring outdoor airflow intake under all load conditions. The system shall be capable of increasing or reducing the outdoor airflow intake based on feedback from the VAV terminal units as required by Section C403.6.5, without exceptions, and Section C403.7.1, Demand controlled ventilation.
5. Multiple-zone VAV systems with a minimum outdoor air requirement of 2,500 cfm (1180 L/s) or greater shall be equipped with a device capable of measuring supply airflow to the VAV terminal units under all load conditions.
6. In addition to meeting the zone isolation requirements of C403.2.1 a single VAV air handling unit shall not serve more than 50,000 square feet (4645 m^2) unless a single floor is greater than 50,000 square feet (4645 m^2) in which case the air handler is permitted to serve the entire floor.
7. The primary maximum cooling air for the VAV terminal units serving interior cooling load driven zones shall be sized for a supply air temperature that is a minimum of 5°F greater than the supply air temperature for the exterior zones in cooling.
8. Air terminal units with a minimum primary airflow set point of 50 percent or greater of the maximum primary airflow set point shall be sized with an inlet velocity of no greater than 900 feet per minute. Allowable fan motor horsepower shall not exceed 90 percent of the allowable HVAC *fan system bhp* (Option 2) as defined by Section C403.8.1.1.
9. All fan powered VAV terminal units (series or parallel) shall be provided with electronically commutated motors. The DDC system shall be configured to vary the speed of the motor as a function of the heating and cooling load in the space. Minimum speed shall not be greater than 66 percent of design airflow required for the greater of heating or cooling operation. Minimum speed shall be used during periods of low heating and cooling operation and ventilation-only operation.

   Exception: For series fan powered terminal units where the volume of primary air required to deliver the ventilation requirements at minimum speed exceeds the air that would be delivered at the speed defined above, the minimum speed set point shall be configured to exceed the value required to provide the required ventilation air.
10. Fan-powered VAV terminal units shall only be permitted at perimeter zones with an envelope heating load requirement. All other VAV terminal units shall be single duct terminal units.

    Exception: Fan powered VAV terminal units are allowed at interior spaces with an occupant load greater than or equal to 25 people per 1000 square feet of floor area (as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*) with demand control ventilation in accordance with Section C403.7.1.
11. When in occupied heating or in occupied dead band between heating and cooling all fan powered VAV terminal units shall be configured to reset the primary air supply set point, based on the VAV air handling unit outdoor air vent fraction, to the minimum ventilation airflow required per *International Mechanical Code.*
12. Spaces that are larger than 150 square feet (14 m^2) and with an occupant load greater than or equal to ((~~25~~)) 15 people per 1000 square feet (93 m^2) of floor area (as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*) shall be provided with all of the following features:
    12.1. A dedicated VAV terminal unit capable of controlling the space temperature and minimum ventilation shall be provided.
    12.2. Demand control ventilation (DCV) shall be provided that utilizes a carbon dioxide sensor to reset the ventilation set point of the VAV terminal unit from the design minimum to design maximum ventilation rate as required by Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code.*
    12.3. Occupancy sensors shall be provided that are configured to reduce the minimum ventilation rate to zero and setback room temperature set points by a minimum of 5°F, for both cooling and heating, when the space is unoccupied.
13. Dedicated data centers, computer rooms, electronic equipment rooms, telecom rooms, or other similar spaces with cooling loads greater than 5 watts/ft^2 shall be provided with separate, cooling systems to allow the VAV air handlers to turn off during unoccupied hours in the office space and to allow the supply air temperature reset to occur.

    Exception: The VAV air handling unit and VAV terminal units may be used for secondary backup cooling when there is a failure of the primary HVAC system.

    Additionally, computer rooms, electronic equipment rooms, telecom rooms, or other similar spaces shall be provided with airside economizer in accordance with Section C403.5 without using the exceptions to Section C403.5.

    Exception: Heat recovery per exception 9 of Section C403.5 may be in lieu of airside economizer for the separate, independent HVAC system.

14. HVAC system central heating or cooling plant will include a minimum of one of the following options:

    14.1. VAV terminal units with hydronic heating coils connected to systems with hot water generation equipment limited to the following types of equipment: gas-fired hydronic boilers with a thermal efficiency, Et, of not less than 92 percent, air-to-water heat pumps or heat recovery chillers. Hydronic heating coils shall be sized for a maximum entering hot water temperature of 120°F (48.9°C) for peak anticipated heating load conditions.

    14.2. Chilled water VAV air handing units connected to systems with chilled water generation equipment with IPLV values more than 25 percent higher than the minimum part load efficiencies listed in Table C403.3.2(7), in the appropriate size category, using the same test procedures. Equipment shall be listed in the appropriate certification program to qualify. The smallest chiller or compressor in the central plant shall not exceed 20 percent of the total central plant cooling capacity or the chilled water system shall include thermal storage sized for a minimum of 20 percent of the total central cooling plant capacity.

15. The DDC system shall include a fault detection and diagnostics (FDD) system complying with the following:

    15.1. The following temperature sensors shall be permanently installed to monitor system operation:

        15.1.1. Outside air.

        15.1.2. Supply air.

        15.1.3. Return air.

    15.2. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of ±2°F (1.1°C) over the range of 40°F to 80°F (4°C to 26.7°C).

    15.3. The VAV air handling unit controller shall be configured to provide system status by indicating the following:

        15.3.1. Free cooling available.

        15.3.2. Economizer enabled.

        15.3.3. Compressor enabled.

        15.3.4. Heating enabled.

        15.3.5. Mixed air low limit cycle active.

        15.3.6. The current value of each sensor.

    15.4. The VAV air handling unit controller shall be capable of manually initiating each operating mode so that the operation of compressors, economizers, fans and the heating system can be independently tested and verified.

    15.5. The VAV air handling unit shall be configured to report faults to a fault management application able to be accessed by day-to-day operating or service personnel or annunciated locally on zone thermostats.

    15.6. The VAV terminal unit shall be configured to report if the VAV inlet valve has failed by performing the following diagnostic check at a maximum interval of once a month:

        15.6.1. Command VAV terminal unit primary air inlet valve closed and verify that primary airflow goes to zero or other *approved* means to verify that the VAV terminal unit damper actuator and flow ring are operating properly.

        15.6.2. Command VAV thermal unit primary air inlet valve to design airflow and verify that unit is controlling to with 10% of design airflow.

    15.7. The VAV terminal unit shall be configured to report and trend when the zone is driving the following VAV air handling unit reset sequences. The building operator shall have the capability to exclude zones used in the reset sequences from the DDC control system graphical user interface:

        15.7.1. Supply air temperature set point reset to lowest supply air temperature set point for cooling operation.

        15.7.2. Supply air duct static pressure set point reset for the highest duct static pressure set point allowable.

    15.8. The FDD system shall be configured to detect the following faults:

        15.8.1. Air temperature sensor failure/fault.

        15.8.2. Not economizing when the unit should be economizing.

        15.8.3. Economizing when the unit should not be economizing.

        15.8.4. Outdoor air or return air damper not modulating.

        15.8.5. Excess outdoor air.

        15.8.6. VAV terminal unit primary air valve failure.

C403.7 Ventilation and exhaust systems. In addition to other requirements of Section C403 applicable to the provisions of ventilation air or the exhaust of air, ventilation and exhaust systems shall be in accordance with Sections C403.7.1 through C403.7.8.

C403.7.1 Demand control ventilation. Demand control ventilation (DCV) shall be provided for spaces larger than 500 square feet (46 m^2) and with an occupant load greater than or equal to ((~~25~~)) 15 people per 1000 square feet (93 m^2) of floor area (as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*) and served by systems with one or more of the following:

1. An air-side economizer.
2. *Automatic* modulating control of the outdoor air damper.
3. A design outdoor airflow greater than 3,000 cfm (1416 L/s).

Exception: *Demand control ventilation* is not required for systems and spaces as follows:

1. Systems with energy recovery complying with Section C403.7.6.1 or Section C403.3.5.1. This exception is not available for space types located within the "inclusions" column of Groups A-1 and A-3 occupancy classifications of Table C403.3.5.
2. Multiple-*zone* systems without direct digital control of individual zones communicating with a central control panel.
3. System with a design outdoor airflow less than 750 cfm (354 L/s).

((~~4. Spaces where the supply airflow rate minus any makeup or outgoing transfer air requirement is less than 1,200 cfm (566 L/s).~~))

4. Spaces, including but not limited to dining areas, where more than 75 percent of the space design outdoor airflow is transfer air required for makeup air supplying an adjacent commercial kitchen.
5. Ventilation provided for process loads only.
6. Spaces with one of the following occupancy categories (as defined by the *International Mechanical Code*): Correctional cells, daycare sickrooms, science labs, barbers, beauty and nail salons, and bowling alley seating.
7. Dormitory sleeping areas.

C403.7.2 Occupancy sensors. Classrooms, gyms, auditoriums, conference rooms, and other spaces with an occupant load greater than or equal to 25 people per 1000 square feet (93 m^2) of floor area (as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*) that are larger than 500 square feet (46 m^2) of floor area shall have occupancy sensor control that will either close outside air dampers, close ventilation supply dampers or turn off ventilation equipment when the space is unoccupied except where equipped with another means to automatically reduce outside air intake below design rates when spaces are partially occupied.

Exceptions:

1. Spaces with one of the following occupancy categories (as defined by the *International Mechanical Code*):
   1.1. Correctional cells.
   1.2. Daycare sickrooms.
   1.3. Science labs.
   1.4. Barbers.
   1.5. Beauty and nail salons.
   1.6. Bowling alley seating.
2. When the space is unoccupied during occupied building hours, a ventilation rate equal to or less than the zone outdoor airflow as defined in Section 403.3.1.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code* with a zone population of zero.

C403.7.3. Ventilation air heating control. Units that provide ventilation air to multiple zones and operate in conjunction with zone heating and cooling systems shall not use heating or heat recovery to warm supply air to a temperature greater than 60°F (16°C) when representative building loads or outdoor air temperature indicate that the majority of zones require cooling.

C403.7.4 Automatic control of HVAC systems serving guestrooms. In Group R-1 buildings containing more than 50 guestrooms, each guestroom shall be provided with controls complying with the provisions of Sections C403.7.4.1 and C403.7.4.2. Card key controls comply with these requirements.

C403.7.4.1 Temperature set point controls. Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured to automatically raise the cooling set point and lower the heating set point by not less than 4°F (2°C) from the occupant set point within 30 minutes after the occupants have left the guestroom. The controls shall be capable of and configured to automatically raise the cooling set point to not lower than 80°F (27°C) and lower the heating set point to not higher than 60°F (16°C) when the guestroom is unrented or has been continuously unoccupied for over 16 hours or a *networked guestroom control system* indicates that the guestroom is unrented and the guestroom is unoccupied for more than 30 minutes. A *networked guestroom control system* that is capable of returning the thermostat set points to default occupied set points 60 minutes prior to the time a guestroom is scheduled to be occupied is not precluded by this section. Cool-

ing that is capable of limiting relative humidity with a set point not lower than 65 percent relative humidity during unoccupied periods is not precluded by this section.

C403.7.4.2 Ventilation controls. Controls shall be provided on each HVAC system that are capable of and configured to automatically turn off the ventilation and exhaust fans within 30 minutes of the occupants leaving the guestroom, or isolation devices shall be provided to each guestroom that are capable of automatically shutting off the supply of outdoor air to and exhaust air from the guestroom.

Exception: Guestroom ventilation systems are not precluded from having an *automatic* daily pre-occupancy purge cycle that provides daily outdoor air ventilation during unrented periods at the design ventilation rate for 60 minutes, or at a rate and duration equivalent to one air change.

C403.7.5 Enclosed loading dock, motor vehicle repair garage and parking garage exhaust ventilation system controls. Mechanical ventilation systems for enclosed loading docks, motor vehicle repair garages and parking garages shall be designed to exhaust the airflow rates (maximum and minimum) determined in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code.*

Ventilation systems shall be equipped with a control device that operates the system automatically by means of carbon monoxide detectors applied in conjunction with nitrogen dioxide detectors. Controllers shall be configured to shut off fans or modulate fan speed to 50 percent or less of design capacity, or intermittently operate fans less than 20 percent of the occupied time or as required to maintain acceptable contaminant levels in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* provisions.

Gas sensor controllers used to activate the exhaust ventilation system shall stage or modulate fan speed upon detection of specified gas levels. All equipment used in sensor controlled systems shall be designed for the specific use and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The system shall be arranged to operate automatically by means of carbon monoxide detectors applied in conjunction with nitrogen dioxide detectors. ((~~Garage~~)) Parking garages, repair garages and loading docks shall be equipped with a controller and a full array of carbon monoxide (CO) sensors set to maintain levels of carbon monoxide below 35 parts per million (ppm). Additionally, a full array of nitrogen dioxide detectors shall be connected to the controller set to maintain the nitrogen dioxide level below the OSHA standard for eight hour exposure.

Spacing and location of the sensors shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.

C403.7.5.1 System activation devices for enclosed loading docks. Ventilation systems for enclosed loading docks shall operate continuously during unoccupied hours at the minimum ventilation rate required by Section 404 of the International Mechanical Code and shall be activated to the full required ventilation rate by one of the following:

1. Gas sensors installed in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code;* or
2. Occupant detection sensors used to activate the system that detects entry into the loading area along both the vehicle and pedestrian pathways.

C403.7.5.2 System activation devices for enclosed parking garages. Ventilation systems for enclosed parking garages shall be activated by gas sensors.

Exception: A parking garage ventilation system having a total design capacity under 8,000 cfm may use occupant sensors to activate the full required ventilation rate.

C403.7.6 Energy recovery ventilation systems. Any system with minimum outside air requirements at design conditions greater than 5,000 cfm or any system where the system's supply airflow rate exceeds the value listed in Tables C403.7.6(1) and C403.7.6(2), based on the climate zone and percentage of outdoor airflow rate at design conditions, shall include an energy recovery system. Table C403.7.6(1) shall be used for all ventilation systems that operate less than 8,000 hours per year, and Table C403.7.6(2) shall be used for all ventilation systems that operate 8,000 hours or more per year. The energy recovery system shall have the capability to provide a change in the enthalpy of the outdoor air supply of not less than ((~~50~~)) 60 percent of the difference between the outdoor air and return air enthalpies, at design conditions. Where an air economizer is required, the energy recovery system shall include a bypass of the energy recovery media for both the outdoor air and exhaust air or return air dampers and controls which permit operation of the air economizer as required by Section C403.5. Where a single room or space is supplied by multiple units, the aggregate ventilation (cfm) of those units shall be used in applying this requirement. The return/exhaust air stream temperature for heat recovery device selection shall be 70°F (21°C) at 30 percent relative humidity, or as calculated by the registered design professional.

SDCI Informative Note: In Seattle, the energy recovery effectiveness is determined typically by the winter heat recovery condition. See example below for how the minimum supply air enthalpy leaving the energy recovery media is calculated for the winter condition:

1. In Seattle, the winter outdoor design air temperature is 24°F as specified in Appendix C. The registered design professional shall determine the coincident winter wet bulb temperature or percent relative humidity at the anticipated design conditions. Based on these conditions the outdoor design air enthalpy is determined from a psychrometric chart.

2. Determine the return/exhaust air stream enthalpy from a psychrometric chart based on the 70°F (21°C) at 30 percent relative humidity.
3. Calculate the 60% difference between the outside air and return air enthalpies at design winter conditions.
4. See example below:
   a. OA Enthalpy at 24°F/23°F (drybulb/wetbulb) = 8.2 BTU/LB
   b. RA/EA Enthalpy at 70°F and 30% RH = 21.9 BTU/LB
   c. SA Enthalpy Minimum Leaving Energy Recovery Media
      = (8.2 + (21.9 – 8.2) * 60%)
      = 16.42 BTU/LB

(Note that this example represents 60% enthalpy recovery. For an equivalent sensible-only recovery system, it would take 73.9% effectiveness (increasing from 24°F DB to 58°F DB) to achieve the same enthalpy recovery.)

Exceptions:

1. The energy recovery systems for occupancy type I-2 hospitals, medical office buildings, and buildings that primarily consist of technical laboratory spaces, are permitted to provide a change of enthalpy of the outdoor air and return air of not less than 50 percent of the difference between the outdoor air and return air enthalpies, at design conditions. These occupancies are also permitted to utilize exception #3.
2. The energy recovery systems for R-1 and R-2 occupancies shall have a 60 percent minimum sensible heat recovery effectiveness, in lieu of 60 percent enthalpy recovery effectiveness. The return/exhaust air stream temperature for heat recovery device selection shall be 70°F (21°C), or as calculated by the registered design professional.
3. An energy recovery ventilation system shall not be required in any of the following conditions:
   1. Where energy recovery systems are restricted per Section 514 of the International Mechanical Code to sensible energy, recovery shall comply with one of the following:
      1.1. Kitchen exhaust systems where they comply with Section C403.7.7.1.
      1.2. Laboratory fume hood systems where they comply with Exception 2 of Section C403.7.6.
      1.3. Other sensible energy recovery systems with the capability to provide a change in dry bulb temperature of the outdoor air supply of not less than 50 percent of the difference between the outdoor air and the return air dry bulb temperatures, at design conditions.
   2. Laboratory fume hood systems that include at least one of the following features and also comply with Section C403.7.7.2:
      2.1. Variable-air-volume hood exhaust and room supply systems capable of reducing exhaust and makeup air volume to 50 percent or less of design values.
      2.2. Direct makeup (auxiliary) air supply equal to at least 75 percent of the exhaust rate, heated no warmer than 2°F (1.1°C) above room set point, cooled to no cooler than 3°F (1.7°C) below room set point, no humidification added, and no simultaneous heating and cooling used for dehumidification control.
   3. Systems serving spaces that are heated to less than 60°F (15.5°C) and are not cooled.
   4. Where more than 60 percent of the outdoor air heating energy is provided from site-recovered energy.
   5. Systems exhausting toxic, flammable, paint or corrosive fumes or dust.
   6. Cooling energy recovery in Climate Zones 3C, 4C, 5B, 5C, 6B, 7 and 8.
   7. Systems requiring dehumidification that employ energy recovery in series with the cooling coil.
   8. Multi-zone systems where the supply airflow rate is less than the values specified in Tables C403.7.6(1) and C403.7.6(2) for the corresponding percent of outdoor air. Where a value of NR is listed, energy recovery shall not be required.
   9. Equipment which meets the requirements of Section C403.9.2.4.
   10. Systems serving Group R-1 and R-3 dwelling or sleeping units where the largest source of air exhausted at a single location at the building exterior is less than 25 percent of the design outdoor air flow rate.

TABLE C403.7.6(1)
ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENT
(VENTILATION SYSTEMS OPERATING LESS THAN 8,000 HOURS PER YEAR)

CLIMATE ZONE	PERCENT (%) OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW RATE							
	≥ 10% and < 20%	≥ 20% and < 30%	≥ 30% and < 40%	≥ 40% and < 50%	≥ 50% and < 60%	≥ 60% and < 70%	≥ 70% and < 80%	≥ 80%
	DESIGN SUPPLY FAN AIRFLOW RATE (cfm)							
4C, 5B	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	NR	≥ 5,000	≥ 5,000

NR = Not Required.

TABLE C403.7.6.1(2)
ENERGY RECOVERY REQUIREMENT
(VENTILATION SYSTEMS OPERATING NOT LESS 8,000 HOURS PER YEAR)

CLIMATE ZONE	PERCENT (%) OUTDOOR AIR AT FULL DESIGN AIRFLOW RATE							
	≥ 10% and < 20%	≥ 20% and < 30%	≥ 30% and < 40%	≥ 40% and < 50%	≥ 50% and < 60%	≥ 60% and < 70%	≥ 70% and < 80%	≥ 80%
	DESIGN SUPPLY FAN AIRFLOW RATE (cfm)							
4C	NR	≥ 19500	≥ 9000	≥ 5000	≥ 4000	≥ 3000	≥ 1500	≥ 120
5B	≥ 2500	≥ 2000	≥ 1000	≥ 500	≥ 140	≥ 120	≥ 100	≥ 80

NR = Not Required.

C403.7.7 Exhaust systems.

C403.7.7.1 Kitchen exhaust systems.

C403.7.7.1.1 Replacement air. Replacement air introduced directly into the exhaust hood cavity shall not be greater than 10 percent of the hood exhaust airflow rate.

C403.7.7.1.2 Kitchen exhaust hood certification and maximum airflow. Where a kitchen or kitchen/dining facility has a total kitchen hood exhaust airflow rate that is greater than 2,000 cfm, each hood shall be a factory built commercial exhaust hood listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory in compliance with UL 710 and each hood shall have a maximum exhaust rate as specified in Table C403.7.7.1.2. Where a single hood, or hood section, is installed over appliances with different duty ratings, the maximum allowable flow rate for the hood or hood section shall be based on the requirements for the highest appliance duty rating under the hood or hood section.

Exception: Type II dishwasher exhaust hoods that have an exhaust airflow of 1000 cfm or less.

TABLE C403.7.7.1.2
MAXIMUM NET EXHAUST FLOW RATE, CFM PER LINEAR FOOT OF HOOD LENGTH

TYPE OF HOOD	LIGHT-DUTY EQUIPMENT	MEDIUM-DUTY EQUIPMENT	HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT	EXTRA-HEAVY-DUTY EQUIPMENT
Wall-mounted canopy	140	210	280	385
Single island	280	350	420	490
Double island (per side)	175	210	280	385
Eyebrow	175	175	NA	NA
Backshelf/Pass-over	210	210	280	NA

For SI: 1 cfm = 0.4719 L/s; 1 foot = 305 mm.
NA = Not Allowed

C403.7.7.1.3 Kitchen exhaust hood system. Where a kitchen or kitchen/dining facility has a total kitchen hood exhaust airflow rate greater than 2000 cfm, it shall comply with one of the following:

1. Not less than 50 percent of all replacement air shall be transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.
2. Demand ventilation systems on not less than 75 percent of the total exhaust hood airflow that are configured to provide not less than a 50 percent reduction in exhaust and replacement air system airflow rates, including controls necessary to modulate airflow in response to appliance operation and to maintain full capture and containment of smoke, effluent and combustion products during cooking and idle.
3. Listed energy recovery devices with a sensible heat recovery effectiveness of not less than 40 percent on not less than 50 percent of the total exhaust hood airflow.

Exceptions:

1. Where not less than 75 percent of all the replacement air is transfer air that would otherwise be exhausted.
2. UL 710 listed exhaust hoods that have a design maximum exhaust flow rate no greater than 250 cfm per linear foot of hood that serve kitchen or kitchen/dining facilities with a total kitchen hood exhaust airflow rate less than 5000 cfm.

3. Type II dishwasher exhaust hoods that have an exhaust airflow of 1000 cfm or less.

C403.7.7.2 Laboratory exhaust systems. Buildings with laboratory exhaust systems having a total exhaust rate greater than 5,000 cfm (2,360 L/s) shall include heat recovery systems to preconditioned replacement air from laboratory exhaust. The heat recovery system shall be capable of increasing the outside air supply temperature at design heating conditions by 25°F (13.9°C). A provision shall be made to bypass or control the heat recovery system to permit air economizer operation as required by Section C403.5.

Exceptions:

1. Variable air volume laboratory exhaust and room supply systems configured to reduce exhaust and make-up air volume to 50% or less of design values; or
2. Direct make-up (auxiliary) air supply equal to at least 75% of the exhaust rate, heated no warmer than 2°F (1.1°C) below room set point, cooled to no cooler than 3°F (1.7°C) above room set point, no humidification added, and no simultaneous heating and cooling used for dehumidification control; or
3. Combined energy reduction method: VAV exhaust and room supply system configured to reduce exhaust and makeup air volumes and a heat recovery system to precondition makeup air from laboratory exhaust that when combined will produce the same energy reduction as achieved by a heat recovery system with a 50% sensible recovery effectiveness as required above. For calculation purposes, the heat recovery component can be assumed to include the maximum design supply airflow rate at design conditions. The combined energy reduction (Q_{ER}) shall meet the following:

   $Q_{ER} \geq Q_{MIN}$

   $Q_{MIN} = CFM_S \times (T_R - T_O) \times 1.1 \times 0.6$

   $Q_{ER} = CFM_S \times (T_R - T_O) \times 1.1(A+B)/100$

   Where:

   Q_{MIN} = Energy recovery at 60% sensible effectiveness (Btu/h)

   Q_{ER} = Combined energy reduction (Btu/h)

   CFM_S = The maximum design supply airflow rate to conditioned spaces served by the system in cubic feet per minute

   T_R = Space return air dry bulb at winter design conditions

   T_O = Outdoor air dry bulb at winter design conditions

   A = Percentage that the exhaust and makeup air volumes can be reduced from design conditions

   B = Percentage sensible heat recovery effectiveness

C403.7.7.3 Transfer air. Conditioned supply air delivered to any space with mechanical exhaust shall not exceed the greater of:

1. The supply flow required to meet the space heating or cooling load;
2. The ventilation rate required by the authority having jurisdiction, the facility Environmental Health and Safety department, or Section C403.2.2; or
3. The mechanical exhaust flow minus the available transfer air from conditioned spaces or return air plenums that at their closest point are within 15 feet of each other on the same floor that are not in different smoke or fire compartments. Available transfer air is that portion of outdoor ventilation air that:

   3.1. Is not required to satisfy other exhaust needs,

   3.2. Is not required to maintain pressurization of other spaces, and

   3.3. Is transferable according to applicable codes and standards and per the *International Mechanical Code.*

Exceptions:

1. Laboratories classified as biosafety level 3 or higher.
2. Vivarium spaces.
3. Spaces that are required by applicable codes and standards to be maintained at positive pressure relative to adjacent spaces. For spaces taking this exception, any transferable air that is not directly transferred shall be made available to the associated air-handling unit and shall be used whenever economizer or other options do not save more energy.
4. Spaces where the demand for transfer air may exceed the available transfer airflow rate and where the spaces have a required negative pressure relationship. For spaces taking this exception, any transferable air that is not directly transferred shall be made available to the associated air-handling unit and shall be used whenever economizer or other options do not save more energy.

C403.7.8 Shutoff dampers. Mechanical openings shall be provided with shutoff dampers in accordance with Sections C403.7.8.1 through C403.7.8.4.

C403.7.8.1 Shutoff dampers for building isolation. Outdoor air supply, exhaust openings and relief outlets and stairway and elevator hoistway shaft vents shall be provided with Class I motorized dampers. See Sections C403.10.1 and C403.10.2 for ductwork insulation requirements upstream and downstream of the shutoff damper.

Exceptions:

1. Gravity (nonmotorized) dampers shall be permitted in lieu of motorized dampers as follows:
   1.1. Relief dampers serving systems less than ((~~5,000~~)) 300 cfm total supply shall be permitted. ((~~in buildings less than three stories in height.~~))
   1.2. Gravity (nonmotorized) dampers where the design outdoor air intake or exhaust capacity does not exceed ((~~400~~)) 300 cfm (189 L/s).
   1.3. Systems serving areas which require continuous operation for 24/7 occupancy schedules.
2. Shutoff dampers are not required in:
   2.1. Combustion air intakes.
   2.2. Systems serving areas which require continuous operation in animal hospitals, kennels and pounds, laboratories, and Group H, I and R occupancies.
   2.3. Subduct exhaust systems or other systems that are required to operate continuously by the *International Mechanical Code.*
   2.4. Type I grease exhaust systems or other systems where dampers are prohibited by the *International Mechanical Code* to be in the airstream.
   2.5. Unconditioned stairwells or unconditioned elevator hoistway shafts that are only connected to unconditioned spaces.

C403.7.8.2 Shutoff dampers for return air. Return air openings used for airside economizer operation shall be equipped with Class I motorized dampers.

C403.7.8.3 Damper leakage rating. Class I dampers shall have a maximum leakage rate of 4 cfm/ft^2 (20.3 L/s × m^2) at 1.0 inch water gauge (w.g.) (249 Pa) when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D and shall be labeled by an approved agency for such purpose. Gravity (nonmotorized) dampers shall have an air leakage rate not greater than 20 cfm/ft^2 where not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in either dimension and 40 cfm/ft^2 where less than 24 inches in either dimension. The rate of air leakage shall be determined at 1.0 inch w.g. (249 Pa) when tested in accordance with AMCA 500D for such purpose. The dampers shall be labeled by an approve agency. Gravity dampers for ventilation air intakes shall be protected from direct exposure to wind.

Exceptions:

1. Gravity (nonmotorized) dampers are not required to be tested to verify the air leakage rating when installed in exhaust systems where the exhaust capacity does not exceed 400 cfm (189 L/s) and the gravity damper is provided with a gasketed seal.
2. Motorized dampers on return air openings in unitary packaged equipment that have the minimum leakage rate available from the manufacturer.

C403.7.8.4 Damper actuation. Outdoor air intake, relief and exhaust shutoff dampers shall be installed with *automatic* controls configured to close when the systems or spaces served are not in use or during unoccupied period warm-up and setback operation, unless the systems served require outdoor or exhaust air in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code* or the dampers are opened to provide intentional economizer cooling. Stairway and elevator hoistway shaft vent dampers shall be installed with *automatic* controls configured to open upon the activation of any fire alarm initiating device of the building's fire alarm system or the interruption of power to the damper.

C403.8 Fan and fan controls. Fans in HVAC systems shall comply with Sections C403.8.1 through C403.8.5.1.

The airflow requirements of Section C403.8.5.1 shall apply to all fan motors. Group R occupancy exhaust fans shall also comply with Section C403.8.4.

C403.8.1 Allowable fan motor horsepower. Each HVAC system having a total fan system motor nameplate horsepower exceeding 5 hp (3.7kW) at fan system design conditions shall not exceed the allowable *fan system motor nameplate hp* (Option 1) or *fan system bhp* (Option 2) as shown in Table C403.8.1(1). This includes supply fans, exhaust fans, return/relief fans, and fan-powered VAV air terminal units associated with systems providing heating or cooling capability. Single *zone* variable-air-volume systems shall comply with the constant volume fan power limitation. Zone heating and/or cooling terminal units installed in conjunction with a dedicated outdoor air system (DOAS) shall be evaluated as separate HVAC systems for allowable fan motor horsepower.

Exceptions:

1. Hospital, vivarium and laboratory systems that utilize flow control devices on exhaust or return to maintain space pressure relationships necessary for occupant health and safety or environmental control shall be permitted to use variable volume fan power limitation.
2. Individual exhaust fans with motor nameplate horsepower of 1 hp or less are exempt from the allowable fan motor horsepower requirements, but must meet the requirements of Section C405.8 for fractional hp fan motors.

TABLE C403.8.1(1)
FAN POWER LIMITATION

	LIMIT	CONSTANT VOLUME	VARIABLE VOLUME
Option 1: Fan system motor nameplate hp	Allowable nameplate motor hp	$hp \le CFM_S \times 0.0011$	$hp \le CFM_S \times 0.0015$
Option 2: Fan system bhp	Allowable fan system bhp	$bhp \le CFM_S \times 0.00094 + A$	$bhp \le CFM_S \times 0.0013 + A$

For SI: 1 bhp = 735.5 W, 1 hp = 745.5 W, 1 cfm = 0.471 L/s.
where:

CFM_S = The maximum design supply airflow rate to *conditioned spaces* served by the system in cubic feet per minute.
Hp = The maximum combined motor nameplate horsepower.
Bhp = The maximum combined fan brake horsepower.
A = Sum of [PD × CFMD / 4131]

where:

PD = Each applicable pressure drop adjustment from Table C403.8.1(2) in. w.c.
CFM_D = The design airflow through each applicable device from Table C403.8.1(2) in cubic feet per minute.

TABLE C403.8.1(2)
FAN POWER LIMITATION PRESSURE DROP ADJUSTMENT

Device	Adjustment
Credits	
Return air or exhaust system required by code or accreditation standards to be fully ducted, or systems required to maintain air pressure differentials between adjacent rooms	0.5 inch w.c. (2.15 inches w.c. for laboratory and vivarium systems)
Return and/or exhaust air flow control devices	0.5 inch w.c.
Exhaust filters, scrubbers, or other exhaust treatment	The pressure drop of device calculated at fan system design condition
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 9 – 12	0.5 inch w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 13 – 15	0.9 inch w.c.
Particulate filtration credit: MERV 16 and greater and electronically enhanced filters	Pressure drop calculated at 2x clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition
Carbon and other gas-phase air cleaners	Clean filter pressure drop at fan system design condition
Biosafety cabinet	Pressure drop of device at fan system design condition
Energy recovery device, other than coil runaround loop	For each airstream (2.2 × energy recovery effectiveness - 0.5 inch w.c.)
Coil runaround loop	0.6 inch w.c. for each airstream
Evaporative humidifier/cooler in series with another cooling coil	Pressure drop of device at fan system design conditions
Sound attenuation section (fans serving spaces with design background noise goals below NC35)	0.15 inch w.c.
Exhaust system serving fume hoods	0.35 inch w.c.
Laboratory and vivarium exhaust systems in high-rise buildings	0.25 inch w.c./100 feet of vertical duct exceeding 75 feet
Deductions	
Systems without central cooling device	-0.6 inch w.c.
Systems without central heating device	-0.3 inch w.c.
Systems with central electric resistance heating	-0.2 inch w.c.

For SI: 1 inch w.c. = 249 Pa, 1 inch = 25.4 mm.
w.c. = water column, NC = Noise criterion.

C403.8.2 Motor nameplate horsepower. For each fan, the selected fan motor shall be no larger than the first available motor size greater than the brake horsepower (bhp). The fan bhp shall be indicated on the design documents to allow for compliance verification by the *code official.*

Exceptions:

1. For fans less than 6 bhp (4413 W), where the first available motor larger than the brake horsepower has a nameplate rating within 50 percent of the bhp, selection of the next larger nameplate motor size is allowed.
2. For fans 6 bhp (4413 W) and larger, where the first available motor larger than the bhp has a nameplate rating within 30 percent of the bhp, selection of the next larger nameplate motor size is allowed.
3. For fans used only in *approved* life safety applications such as smoke evacuation.
4. Fans with motor nameplate horsepower less than 1 hp are exempt from this section.

C403.8.3 Fan efficiency. Fans shall have a fan efficiency grade (FEG) of 67 or higher based on manufacturers' certified data, as defined by AMCA 205. The total efficiency of the fan at the design point of operation shall be within 15 percentage points of the maximum total efficiency of the fan.

Exception: The following fans are not required to have a fan efficiency grade:

1. Individual fans with a motor nameplate horsepower of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less that are not part of a group operated as the functional equivalent of a single fan.
2. Multiple fans in series or parallel that have a combined motor nameplate horsepower of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less and are operated as the functional equivalent of a single fan.
3. Fans that are part of equipment covered under Section C403.3.2.
4. Fans included in an equipment package certified by an approved agency for air or energy performance.
5. Powered wall/roof ventilators.
6. Fans outside the scope of AMCA 205.
7. Fans that are intended to operate only during emergency conditions.
8. Fans and fan arrays having a fan energy index (FEI) of not less than 1.00, or 0.95 for VAV systems, at the design point of operation, as determined in accordance with AMCA 208 by an approved, independent testing laboratory and labeled by the manufacturer. The FEI for fan arrays shall be calculated in accordance with AMCA 208 Annex C.

C403.8.4 Group R occupancy ((~~exhaust~~)) ventilation fan efficacy. The Group R occupancies of the building shall be provided with ventilation that meets the requirements of the *International Mechanical Code,* as applicable, or with other approved means of ventilation. Mechanical ventilation system fans with 400 cfm or less in capacity shall meet the efficacy requirements of Table C403.8.4 at one or more rating points. Air flow shall be tested in accordance with Home Ventilating Standard (HVI) Standard 916 and listed. Fan efficacy shall be listed or shall be derived from listed power and airflow. Fan efficacy for fully ducted HRV, ERV, balanced, and in-line fans shall be determined at a static pressure of not less than 0.2 inch w.c. Fan efficacy for other exhaust fans shall be determined at a static pressure of not less than 0.1 inch w.c.

Exceptions:

((~~1. Group R heat recovery ventilator and energy recovery ventilator fans that are less than 400 cfm.~~

~~2~~)) 1. Where whole house ventilation fans are integrated with forced-air systems that are tested and listed HVAC equipment, provided they are powered by an electronically commutated motor where required by Section C405.8.

((~~3~~)) 2. Domestic clothes dryer booster fans, domestic range rood exhaust fans, and domestic range booster fans that operate intermittently.

TABLE C403.8.4
GROUP R EXHAUST FAN EFFICACY

Fan location	((~~Air Flow Rate Minimum (cfm)~~))	Minimum Efficacy (cfm/watt)	Air Flow Rate ((~~Minimum~~)) (cfm)
Exhaust fan: Bathroom, utility room, whole house	((~~10~~))	2.8	< 90
Exhaust fan: Bathroom, utility room, whole house	((~~90~~))	3.5	((~~Any~~)) ≥ 90
In-line (single-port and multi-port) fans	((~~Any~~))	3.8	Any
ERV, HRV or balanced fan		1.2	Any

C403.8.5 Fan controls. Controls shall be provided for fans in accordance with Section C403.8.5.1 and as required for specific systems provided in Section C403.

C403.8.5.1 Fan airflow control. Each cooling system listed in Table C403.8.5.1 shall be designed to vary the indoor fan airflow as a function of load and shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Direct expansion (DX) and chilled water cooling units that control the capacity of the mechanical cooling directly based on space temperature shall have not fewer than two stages of fan control. Low or minimum speed shall not be greater than 66 percent of full speed. At low or minimum speed, the fan system shall draw not more than 40 percent

of the fan power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and ventilation-only operation.

2. Other units including DX cooling units and chilled water units that control the space temperature by modulating the airflow to the space shall have modulating fan control. Minimum speed shall be not greater than 50 percent of full speed. At minimum speed, the fan system shall draw no more than 30 percent of the power at full fan speed. Low or minimum speed shall be used during periods of low cooling load and ventilation-only operation.
3. Units that include an airside economizer in accordance with Section C403.5 shall have not fewer than two speeds of fan control during economizer operation.

Exceptions:

1. Modulating fan control is not required for chilled water and evaporative cooling units with fan motors of less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) where the units are not used to provide ventilation air and the indoor fan cycles with the load.
2. Where the volume of outdoor air required to comply with the ventilation requirements of the *International Mechanical Code* at low speed exceeds the air that would be delivered at the minimum speed defined in Section C403.8.5, the minimum speed shall be selected to provide the required *ventilation air*.

TABLE C403.8.5.1
FAN CONTROL

Cooling System Type	Fan Motor Size	Mechanical Cooling Capacity
DX cooling	Any	≥ 42,000 Btu/h
Chilled water and evaporative cooling	≥ 1/4 hp	Any

C403.9 Heat rejection and heat recovery equipment.

C403.9.1 Heat rejection equipment. Heat rejection equipment, including air-cooled condensers, dry coolers, open-circuit cooling towers, closed-circuit cooling towers and evaporative condensers, shall comply with this section.

Exception: Heat rejection devices where energy use is included in the equipment efficiency ratings listed in Tables C403.3.2(1)A, C403.3.2(1)B, C403.3.2(1)C, C403.3.2(2), C403.3.2(3), C403.3.2(7) and C403.3.2(9).

Heat rejection equipment shall have a minimum efficiency performance not less than values specified in Table C403.3.2(8).

Cooling towers serving chilled water systems shall be selected to maintain a return condenser water temperature to the tower of 86°F (30°C) or less at peak design conditions.

Exception: In existing buildings where physical constraints preclude a change from the original design, replacement cooling towers of the same or smaller capacity are exempt from this requirement.

Single-pass water cooling systems that use domestic water only one time before dumping it to waste shall not be used for hydronic heat pump and other cooling and refrigeration equipment, including but not limited to icemakers and walk-in coolers.

Exceptions:

1. Replacement of existing icemakers is exempt from this requirement.
2. Use of single-pass cooling for medical and dental equipment during power outages and other emergencies is exempt from this requirement.

C403.9.1.1 Fan speed control. Each fan powered by an individual motor or array of motors with a connected power, including the motor service factor, totaling 5 hp (3.7 kW) or more shall have controls and devices configured to automatically modulate the fan speed to control the leaving fluid temperature or condensing temperature and pressure of the heat rejection device. Fan motor power input shall be not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of the design airflow.

Exceptions:

1. Fans serving multiple refrigerant or fluid cooling circuits.
2. Condenser fans serving flooded condensers.

C403.9.1.2 Multiple-cell heat rejection equipment. Multiple-cell heat rejection equipment with variable speed fan drives shall be controlled to operate the maximum number of fans allowed that comply with the manufacturer's requirements for all system components and so that all fans can operate at the same fan speed required for the instantaneous cooling duty, as opposed to staged (on/off) operation. The minimum fan speed shall be the minimum allowable speed of the fan drive system in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

C403.9.1.3 Limitation on centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers. Centrifugal fan open-circuit cooling towers with a combined rated capacity of 1,100 gpm (4164 L/m) or greater at 95°F (35°C) condenser water return, 85°F (29°C) con-

denser water supply, and 75°F (24°C) outdoor air wet-bulb temperature shall meet the energy efficiency requirement for axial fan open-circuit cooling towers listed in Table C403.3.2(8).

C403.9.1.4 Tower flow turndown. Open-circuit cooling towers used on water-cooled chiller systems that are configured with multiple- or variable-speed condenser water pumps shall be designed so that all open circuit cooling tower cells can be run in parallel with the larger of the flow that is produced by the smallest pump at its minimum expected flow rate or at 50 percent of the design flow for the cell.

C403.9.2 Heat recovery.

C403.9.2.1 Heat recovery for service water heating. Condenser heat recovery shall be installed for heating or reheating of service hot water provided the facility operates 24 hours a day, the total installed heat capacity of water cooled systems exceeds 1,500,000 Btu/hr of heat rejection, and the design service water heating load exceeds 250,000 Btu/hr.

The required heat recovery system shall have the capacity to provide the smaller of:

1. Sixty percent of the peak heat rejection load at design conditions; or
2. The preheating required to raise the peak service hot water draw to 85°F (29°C).

Exceptions:

1. Facilities that employ condenser heat recovery for space heating or reheat purposes with a heat recovery design exceeding 30 percent of the peak water-cooled condenser load at design conditions.
2. Facilities that provide 60 percent of their service water heating from on-site solar thermal or site recovered energy.

C403.9.2.2 Steam condensate systems. On-site steam heating systems shall have condensate water ((~~heat~~)) recovery. On-site includes a system that is located within or adjacent to one or more buildings within the boundary of a contiguous area or campus under one ownership and which serves one or more of those buildings.

Buildings using steam generated off-site with steam heating systems which do not have condensate water recovery shall have condensate ((~~water~~)) heat recovery.

C403.9.2.3 Refrigeration condenser heat recovery. Facilities having food service, meat or deli departments and having 500,000 Btu/h or greater of remote refrigeration condensers shall have condenser waste heat recovery from freezers and coolers and shall use the waste heat for service water heating, space heating or for dehumidification reheat. Facilities having a gross *conditioned floor area* of 40,000 ft^2 or greater and 1,000,000 Btu/h or greater of remote refrigeration shall have condenser waste heat recovery from freezers and coolers and shall use the waste heat for service water heating, and either for space heating or for dehumidification reheat for maintaining low space humidity. The required heat recovery system shall have the capacity to provide the smaller of:

1. 60 percent of the peak heat rejection load at design conditions; or
2. 50 percent of the sum of the service water heating load plus space heating load.

C403.9.2.4 Heat recovery for space heating. A water-source condenser heat recovery system meeting the requirements of Sections C403.9.2.4.1 through C403.9.2.4.4 shall be installed to serve space and ventilation heating systems in new buildings and additions meeting the following criteria:

1. The facility operates greater than 70 hours per week.
2. The sum of all heat rejection equipment capacity serving the new building or addition exceeds 1,500,000 BTU/hr.
3. The sum of zone minimum airflows in all zones with zone reheat coils divided by the *conditioned floor area* served by those systems is at least 0.45 cfm per square foot.

Exception: Systems complying with Section C403.3.5, Dedicated outdoor air systems (DOAS).

C403.9.2.4.1 Water to water heat recovery. Ninety percent (90%) of the total building space and ventilation heating system design load shall be served by systems that include heat recovery chiller or water to water heat pump equipment capable of rejecting heat from the cooling loop to the space and ventilation heating loop as the first stage of heating.

C403.9.2.4.2 Exhaust heat recovery. Heat shall be recovered by the heat recovery system from 90 percent of the total building exhaust airflow. The maximum leaving air temperature of exhaust air after heat recovery shall be 55°F dry-bulb when operating at full capacity in heat recovery mode.

Exceptions:

1. Where energy recovery systems are restricted by Section 514 of the *International Mechanical Code* to sensible energy, those systems shall not be included in the calculation of total building exhaust airflow.
2. Exhaust air systems handling contaminated airstreams that are regulated by applicable codes or accreditation standards and pose a health risk to maintenance personnel to maintain heat recovery devices, those systems shall not be included in the calculation of total building exhaust airflow.

C403.9.2.4.3 Process heat recovery. Spaces with year-round cooling loads from lights and equipment of 5 watts and greater per square foot shall be served by water-cooled equipment. Cooling loops serving the water-cooled equipment shall be served by water source heat recovery systems meeting the requirements of Section C403.9.2.4.1. If such spaces are provided with an air or water economizer, the economizer controls shall be configured with an override signal from the building automation system to disable economizer operation during heat recovery mode.

C403.9.2.4.4 Water to water heat recovery sizing. The minimum total combined capacity of heat recovery chillers or water to water heat pumps shall match the total combined capacity of installed equipment sized to meet the requirements of Sections C403.9.2.4.2 and C403.9.2.4.3. *

C403.10 Construction of HVAC system elements. Ducts, plenums, piping and other elements that are part of an HVAC system shall be constructed and insulated in accordance with Sections C403.10.1 through C403.10.3.1

C403.10.1 Duct and plenum insulation and sealing.

C403.10.1.1 Ducts conveying outdoor air. Ducts, shafts and plenums conveying outdoor air from the exterior of the building to the mechanical system shall meet all air leakage and building envelope insulation requirements of Section C402, plus building envelope vapor control requirements from the *International Building Code*, extending continuously from the building exterior to an *automatic* shutoff damper or heating or cooling equipment. For the purposes of building envelope insulation requirements, duct surfaces shall be insulated with the minimum insulation values in Table C403.10.1.1. Duct surfaces included as part of the building envelope shall not be used in the calculation of maximum glazing area as described in Section C402.4.1.

Exceptions:

1. Outdoor air ducts serving individual supply air units with less than 2,800 cfm of total supply air capacity, provided these are insulated to the minimum insulation values in Table C403.10.1.1.
2. Unheated equipment rooms with combustion air louvers, provided they are isolated from conditioned space at sides, top and bottom of the room with R-11 nominal insulation.

TABLE C403.10.1.1
OUTDOOR AIR DUCTWORK INSULATION

Duct system	Duct Location and Use	Climate Zone	Airflow	Minimum Installed Duct Insulation *R*-value[a,b]	Notes
Outdoor Air	Inside conditioned space and upstream of *automatic* shutoff damper	4C and 5B	≥ 2800 CFM	R-16	See Section C403.10.1.1 for additional requirements
Outdoor Air	Inside conditioned space and downstream of *automatic* shutoff damper to HVAC unit or room	4C	≥ 2800 CFM	R-8	
Outdoor Air	Inside conditioned space and downstream of *automatic* shutoff damper to HVAC unit or room	5B	≥ 2800 CFM	R-12	
Outdoor Air	Inside conditioned space	4C and 5B	< 2800 CFM	R-7	See Exception 1 to Section C403.10.1.1 for additional details

a. Insulation *R*-values, measured in h•ft^2•°F/Btu, are for the insulation as installed and do not include film resistance. The required minimum thicknesses do not consider water vapor transmission and possible surface condensation. Insulation resistance measured on a horizontal plane in accordance with ASTM C518 at a mean temperature of 75°F at the installed thickness.

b. See International Mechanical Code Sections 603.12 and 604 for further details on duct insulation requirements.

C403.10.1.2 Other supply and return ducts. All other supply and return air ducts and plenums shall be insulated with a minimum of R-6 insulation where located in unconditioned spaces, and where located outside the building with a minimum of R-8 insulation in Climate Zone 4 and R-12 insulation in Climate Zone 5. Where located within a building envelope assembly, the duct or plenum shall be separated from the building exterior or unconditioned or exempt spaces by minimum insulation value as required for exterior walls by Section C402.1.3.

Exceptions:

1. Where located within equipment.
2. Supply and return ductwork located in unconditioned spaces where the design temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the duct or plenum does not exceed 15°F (8°C) and insulated in accordance with Table C403.10.1.2.

Where located within conditioned space, supply ducts which convey supply air at temperatures less than 55°F or greater than 105°F shall be insulated with a minimum insulation *R*-value in accordance with Table C403.10.1.2.

Exception: Ductwork exposed to view within a zone that serves that zone is not required to be insulated.

Where located within conditioned space, return or exhaust air ducts that convey return or exhaust air downstream of an energy recovery media shall be insulated with a minimum *R*-value in accordance with Table C403.10.1.2.

All ducts, air handlers, and filter boxes shall be sealed. Joints and seams shall comply with Section 603.9 of the *International Mechanical Code.*

TABLE C403.10.1.2
SUPPLY, RETURN, EXHAUST, and RELIEF AIR DUCTWORK INSULATION

Duct system	Duct Location and Use	Climate Zone	Minimum Installed Duct Insulation R-value[a,b]	Notes
Supply Air or Return Air	Outside the building (outdoors and exposed to weather)[c]	4C	R-8	See Section C403.10.1.2 for details
Supply Air or Return Air	Outside the building (outdoors and exposed to weather)[c]	5B	R-12	See Section C403.10.1.2 for details
Supply Air or Return Air	Unconditioned space (enclosed but not in the building conditioned envelope)	4C and 5B	R-6	See Section C403.10.1.2 for details
Supply Air or Return Air	Unconditioned space where the duct conveys air that is within 15°F of the air temperature of the surrounding unconditioned space	4C and 5B	R-3.3	See IMC Section 603.12 for additional requirements for condensation control at ductwork
Supply Air or Return Air	Where located in a building envelope assembly	4C and 5B	R-16	Duct or plenum is separated from building envelope assembly with the minimum insulation value
Supply Air	Within conditioned space where the supply duct conveys air that is less than 55°F or greater than 105°F	4C and 5B	R-3.3	See Section C403.10.1.2 for details
Supply Air	Within conditioned space that the duct directly serves where the supply duct conveys air that is less than 55°F or greater than 105°F	4C and 5B	None	See Section C403.10.1.2 for details
Supply Air	Within conditioned space where the supply duct conveys air that is 55°F or greater and 105 °F or less	4C and 5B	None	
Return or Exhaust Air	Within conditioned space, downstream of an energy recovery media, upstream of an *automatic* shutoff damper	4C	R-8	
Return or Exhaust Air	Within conditioned space, downstream of an energy recovery media, upstream of an *automatic* shutoff damper	5B	R-12	
Relief or Exhaust Air	Conditioned space and downstream of an *automatic* shutoff damper	4C and 5B	R-16	

a. Insulation *R*-values, measured in h·ft2·°F/Btu, are for the insulation as installed and do not include film resistance. The required minimum thicknesses do not consider water vapor transmission and possible surface condensation. Insulation resistance measured on a horizontal plane in accordance with ASTM C518 at a mean temperature of 75°F at the installed thickness.

b. See International Mechanical Code Sections 603.12 and 604 for further details on duct insulation requirements.

c. Includes attics above insulated ceilings, parking garages and crawl spaces.

C403.10.2 Duct construction. Ductwork shall be constructed and erected in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code.* For the purposes of this section, longitudinal seams are joints oriented in the direction of airflow. Transverse joints are connections of two duct sections oriented perpendicular to airflow. Duct wall penetrations are openings made by any screw, fastener, pipe, rod or wire. All other connections are considered transverse joints, including but not limited to spin-ins, taps and other branch connections, access door frames and jambs, and duct connections to equipment.

C403.10.2.1 Low-pressure duct systems. Longitudinal and transverse joints, seams and connections of supply and return ducts operating at a static pressure less than or equal to 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (500 Pa) shall be securely fastened and sealed with welds, gaskets, mastics (adhesives), mastic-plus embedded-fabric systems or tapes installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Pressure classifications specific to the duct system shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code.*

Exception: Continuously welded and locking-type longitudinal joints and seams on ducts operating at static pressures less than 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (500 Pa) pressure classification.

C403.10.2.2 Medium-pressure duct systems. Ducts and plenums designed to operate at a static pressure greater than 2 inches water gauge (w.g.) (500 Pa) but less than 3 inches w.g. (750 Pa) shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with

Section C403.10.1. Pressure classifications specific to the duct system shall be clearly indicated on the construction documents in accordance with the *International Mechanical Code*.

C403.10.2.3 High-pressure and exterior duct systems. Ducts designed to operate at static pressures equal to or greater than 3 inches water gauge (w.g.) (750 Pa) and all supply and return ductwork located outside the *building thermal envelope* that serves a *conditioned space* shall be insulated and sealed in accordance with Section C403.10.1. In addition, ducts and plenums shall be leak-tested in accordance with the SMACNA *HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual* and shown to have a rate of air leakage (*CL*) less than or equal to 4.0, regardless of the Design Construction Pressure Class level, as determined in accordance with Equation 4-9. Ducts shall be tested using a pressure equal to the average operating pressure or the design Duct Construction Pressure Class level in accordance with the SMACNA HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual.

$$CL = F/P^{0.65} \qquad \textbf{(Equation 4-9)}$$

Where:

F = The measured leakage rate in cfm per 100 square feet of duct surface.

P = The static pressure of the test.

Documentation shall be furnished by the designer demonstrating that representative sections totaling at least 25 percent of the duct area have been tested and that all tested sections meet the requirements of this section.

C403.10.3 Piping insulation. All piping, other than refrigerant piping, serving as part of a heating or cooling system shall be thermally insulated in accordance with Table C403.10.3.

Exceptions:

1. Factory-installed piping within HVAC equipment tested and rated in accordance with a test procedure referenced by this code.
2. Factory-installed piping within room fan-coils and unit ventilators tested and rated according to AHRI 440 (except that the sampling and variation provisions of Section 6.5 shall not apply) and 840, respectively.
3. Piping that conveys fluids that have a design operating temperature range between 60°F (15°C) and 105°F (41°C).
4. Piping that conveys fluids that have not been heated or cooled through the use of fossil fuels or electric power.
5. Strainers, control valves, and balancing valves associated with piping 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter.
6. Direct buried piping that conveys fluids at or below 60°F (15°C).

TABLE C403.10.3
MINIMUM PIPE INSULATION THICKNESS (thickness in inches)[a]

FLUID OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE AND USAGE (°F)	INSULATION CONDUCTIVITY		NOMINAL PIPE OR TUBE SIZE (inches)				
	Conductivity Btu • in./(h · ft² • °F)[b]	Mean Rating Temperature, °F	< 1	1 to < 1-1/2	1-1/2 to < 4	4 to < 8	≥ 8
> 350	0.32 – 0.34	250	4.5	5.0	5.0	5.0	5.0
251 – 350	0.29 – 0.32	200	3.0	4.0	4.5	4.5	4.5
201 – 250	0.27 – 0.30	150	2.5	2.5	2.5	3.0	3.0
141 – 200	0.25 – 0.29	125	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	2.0
105 – 140	0.21 – 0.28	100	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
40 – 60	0.21 – 0.27	75	0.5	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0
< 40	0.20 – 0.26	75	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5

a. For piping smaller than 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) and located in partitions within *conditioned spaces*, reduction of these thicknesses by 1 inch (25 mm) shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in footnote b) but not to a thickness less than 1 inch (25 mm).

b. For insulation outside the stated conductivity range, the minimum thickness (T) shall be determined as follows:

$$T = r\{(1 + t/r)^{K/k} - 1\}$$

where:

T = minimum insulation thickness,

r = actual outside radius of pipe,

t = insulation thickness listed in the table for applicable fluid temperature and pipe size,

K = conductivity of alternate material at mean rating temperature indicated for the applicable fluid temperature (Btu × in/h × ft² × °F) and

k = the upper value of the conductivity range listed in the table for the applicable fluid temperature.

c. For direct-buried heating and hot water system piping, reduction of these thicknesses by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) shall be permitted (before thickness adjustment required in footnote b but not to thicknesses less than 1 inch (25 mm).

C403.10.3.1 Protection of piping insulation. Piping insulation exposed to weather shall be protected from damage, including that due to sunlight, moisture, equipment maintenance and wind, and shall provide shielding from solar radiation that can cause degradation of the material. ((~~Adhesives~~)) Adhesive tape shall not be permitted.

C403.10.4 Insulation of refrigerant piping. Refrigerant piping, other than piping factory installed in HVAC equipment, shall have minimum 1/2-inch insulation within conditioned spaces and 1-inch insulation outside of conditioned spaces, at a conductivity rating of 0.21 to 0.26 Btu x in/(h x ft^2 x °F) with a mean temperature rating of 75°F.

C403.11 Mechanical systems located outside of the building thermal envelope. Mechanical systems providing heat outside of the thermal envelope of a building shall be configured to comply with Section C403.11.1 through C403.11.3.

C403.11.1 Heating outside a building or in unheated spaces. Systems installed to provide heat outside a building or in unheated spaces shall be radiant systems.

Such heating systems shall be controlled by an occupancy sensing device or a timer switch, so that the system is automatically deenergized when no occupants are present in the area heated by each individual device for a period not to exceed 20 minutes.

C403.11.2 Snow- and ice-melt system controls. Snow- and ice-melting systems, supplied through energy service to the building, shall include *automatic* controls configured to shut off the system when the pavement temperature is above 50°F (10°C) and no precipitation is falling and an *automatic* control that is configured to shut off when the outdoor temperature is above 40°F (4°C) so that the potential for snow or ice accumulation is negligible.

C403.11.3 Freeze protection system controls. Freeze protection systems, such as heat tracing of outdoor piping and heat exchangers, including self-regulating heat tracing, shall include *automatic* controls configured to shut off the systems when outdoor air temperatures are above 40°F (4°C) or when the conditions of the protected fluid will prevent freezing.

C403.12 High efficiency single-zone variable air volume (VAV) systems. For HVAC systems subject to the requirements of Section C403.3.5 but utilizing Exception 2 of that section, a high efficiency single-zone VAV system may be provided without a separate parallel DOAS when the system is designed, installed, and configured to comply with all of the following criteria (this ((~~exception~~)) option shall not be used as a substitution for a DOAS per Section C406.6 or as a modification to the requirements for the *Standard Reference Design* in accordance with Section C407):

1. The single-zone VAV system is provided with airside economizer in accordance with Section 403.3 without exceptions.
2. A direct-digital control (DDC) system is provided to control the system as a single zone in accordance with Section C403.4.11 regardless of sizing thresholds of Table C403.4.11.1.
3. Single-zone VAV systems with a minimum outdoor air requirement of 1,000 cfm (472 L/s) or greater shall be equipped with a device capable of measuring outdoor airflow intake under all load conditions. The system shall be capable of increasing or reducing the outdoor airflow intake based on Section C403.7.1, Demand controlled ventilation.
4. Allowable fan motor horsepower shall not exceed 90 percent of the allowable HVAC *fan system bhp* (Option 2) as defined by Section C403.8.1.1.
5. Each single-zone VAV system shall be designed to vary the supply fan airflow as a function of heating and cooling load and minimum fan speed shall not be more than the greater of:
   5.1. 30 percent of peak design airflow; or
   5.2. The required ventilation flow assuming no occupants.
6. Spaces that are larger than 150 square feet (14 m^2) and with an occupant load greater than or equal to 25 people per 1000 square feet (93 m^2) of floor area (as established in Table 403.3.1.1 of the *International Mechanical Code*) shall be provided with all of the following features:
   6.1. Demand control ventilation (DCV) shall be provided that utilizes a carbon dioxide sensor to reset the ventilation set point of the single-zone VAV system from the design minimum to design maximum ventilation rate as required by Chapter 4 of the *International Mechanical Code.*
   6.2. Occupancy sensors shall be provided that are configured to reduce the minimum ventilation rate to zero and setback room temperature set points by a minimum of 5°F, for both cooling and heating, when the space is unoccupied.
7. Single-zone VAV systems shall comply with one of the following options:
   7.1. Single-zone VAV air handling units with a hydronic heating coil connected to systems with hot water generation equipment limited to the following types of equipment: gas-fired hydronic boilers with a thermal efficiency, Et, of not less than 92 percent, air-to-water heat pumps or heat recovery chillers. Hydronic heating coils shall be sized for a maximum entering hot water temperature of 120°F for peak anticipated heating load conditions.
   7.2. Single-zone VAV air handing units with a chilled water coil connected to systems with chilled water generation equipment with IPLV values more than 25 percent higher than the minimum part load efficiencies listed in Table C403.3.2(7), in the appropriate size category, using the same test procedures. Equipment shall be listed in the appropriate certification program to qualify. The smallest chiller or compressor in the central plant shall not exceed 20 percent of the total central plant cooling capacity or the chilled water system shall include thermal storage sized for a minimum of 20 percent of the total central cooling plant capacity.

7.3. Single-zone VAV air handling units with DX cooling, heat pump heating or gas-fired furnace shall comply with the following requirements as applicable:

7.3.1. Have a DX cooling coil with cooling part load efficiency that are a minimum of 15 percent higher than the minimum SEER or IEER listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) and C403.3.2(2).

7.3.2. Have a gas-fired furnace with a thermal efficiency, Et, of not less than 90 percent or heat pump with a minimum heating HSPF or COP efficiency that are a minimum of 10 percent higher than the minimum heating efficiency in Tables C403.3.2(1) and C403.3.2(2).

7.3.3. Heating coils or burner output shall be modulating or have a minimum of 2 stages with the first stage being less than 50 percent of total heating capacity. Cooling coils shall be modulating or have a minimum of 2 stages with the first stage being less than 50 percent of the total cooling capacity.

8. The DDC system shall include a fault detection and diagnostics (FDD) system complying with the following:

8.1. The following temperature sensors shall be permanently installed to monitor system operation:

8.1.1. Outside air.

8.1.2. Supply air.

8.1.3. Return air.

8.2. Temperature sensors shall have an accuracy of ±2°F (1.1°C) over the range of 40°F to 80°F (4°C to 26.7°C).

8.3. The single-zone VAV air handling unit controller shall be configured to provide system status by indicating the following:

8.3.1. Free cooling available.

8.3.2. Economizer enabled.

8.3.3. Compressor enabled.

8.3.4. Heating enabled.

8.3.5. Mixed air low limit cycle active.

8.3.6. The current value of each sensor.

8.4. The single-zone VAV air handling unit controller shall be capable of manually initiating each operating mode so that the operation of compressors, economizers, fans and the heating system can be independently tested and verified.

8.5. The single-zone VAV air handling unit shall be configured to report faults to a fault management application able to be accessed by day-to-day operating or service personnel or annunciated locally on zone thermostats.

8.6. The FDD system shall be configured to detect the following faults:

8.6.1. Air temperature sensor failure/fault.

8.6.2. Not economizing when the unit should be economizing.

8.6.3. Economizing when the unit should not be economizing.

8.6.4. Outdoor air or return air damper not modulating.

8.6.5. Excess outdoor air.

C403.13 Commissioning. Mechanical systems shall be commissioned in accordance with Section C408.

C403.14 Compressed air and vacuum air. Compressed air and vacuum air systems shall comply with all of the following:

Exception: Compressed air and vacuum air systems used for medical purposes are exempt from this section.

1. Air Compressors (50-150 PSI), General: Air compressors operating at 50-150 PSI shall comply with the following:

a. All water drains shall be “no air loss” drains.

b. Timed unheated desiccant air driers shall not be allowed.

2. Rotary Screw Air Compressors over 10 hp (50-150 PSI): Rotary screw air compressors over 10 hp operating at 50-150 PSI shall not rely on modulation control and shall have one of the following:

a. Receiver capacity greater than three gallons per cfm to allow efficient load/unload control;

b. Variable speed drive controlled air compressor; or

c. Multiple air compressors using a smaller trim-air compressor to trim. The trim compressor shall use variable speed drive control, or shall use load/unload control with greater than three gallon receiver capacity per cfm for the trim air compressor.

C403.15 Commercial food service. The following types of equipment within the scope of the applicable Energy Star program shall comply with the energy-efficiency and water-efficiency criteria required to achieve the Energy Star label:

1. Commercial fryers: Energy Star Program Requirements for Commercial Fryers.

2. Commercial hot food holding cabinets: Energy Star Program Requirements for Hot Food Holding Cabinets.
3. Commercial steam cookers: Energy Star Program Requirements for Commercial Steam Cookers.
4. Commercial dishwashers: Energy Star Program Requirements for Commercial Dishwashers.

SECTION C404
SERVICE WATER HEATING AND PRESSURE-BOOSTER SYSTEMS

C404.1 General. This section covers the minimum efficiency of, and controls for, service water-heating equipment and insulation of service hot water piping.

C404.2 Service water-heating equipment performance efficiency. Water-heating equipment and hot water storage tanks shall meet the requirements of Table C404.2. The efficiency shall be verified through certification and *listed* under an *approved* certification program, or if no certification program exists, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the manufacturer. Water-heating equipment intended to be used to provide space heating shall meet the applicable provisions of Table C404.2.

TABLE C404.2
MINIMUM PERFORMANCE OF WATER-HEATING EQUIPMENT

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY (input)	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	PERFORMANCE REQUIRED[a, b]	TEST PROCEDURE
Water heaters, electric	≤ 12 kW[d]	Tabletop[e], ≥ 20 gal and < 120 gal	0.93 - 0.00132*V*, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
		Resistance ≥ 20 gal and ≤ 55 gal	0.960 - 0.0003*V*, EF	
		Grid-enabled[f] > 75 gal and ≤ 120 gal	1.061 - 0.00168*V*, EF	
	> 12 kW	Resistance ≥ 20 gal	~~(((0.3 + 27)/V_m, %/h[g]))~~ (0.3 + 27/V_m), %/h[g]	Section G.2 of ANSI Z21.10.3
	≤ 24 amps and ≤ 250 volts	Heat pump	2.057 - 0.00113*V*, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
Instantaneous water heaters, electric	All	Resistance	0.93 - 0.00132*V*, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
Storage water heaters, gas	≤ 75,000 Btu/h	≥ 20 gal and ≤ 55 gal	0.675 - 0.0015*V*, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
		> 55 gal and ≤ 100 gal	0.8012 - 0.00078*V*, EF	
	> 75,000 Btu/h	< 4,000 Btu/h/gal	80% E_t (Q/800 + 110$\sqrt{V}$)SL, Btu/h	Section G.1 and G.2 of ANSI Z21.10.3
Instantaneous water heaters, gas	> 50,000 Btu/h and < 200,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 2 gal	0.82 - 0.0019*V*, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	≥ 200,000 Btu/h[c]	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 10 gal	80% E_t	Section G.1 and G.2 of ANSI Z21.10.3
	≥ 200,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal	80% E_t (Q/800 + 110$\sqrt{V}$)SL, Btu/h	
Storage water heaters, oil	≤ 105,000 Btu/h	≥ 20 gal	0.68 - 0.0019*V*, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	> 105,000 Btu/h	< 4,000 Btu/h/gal	80% E_t (Q/800 + 110$\sqrt{V}$)SL, Btu/h	Section G.1 and G.2 of ANSI Z21.10.3
Instantaneous water heaters, oil	≤ 210,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 2 gal	0.59 - 0.0019*V*, EF	DOE 10 CFR Part 430
	> 210,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 10 gal	80% E_t	Section G.1 and G.2 of ANSI Z21.10.3
	> 210,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal	78% E_t (Q/800 + 110$\sqrt{V}$)SL, Btu/h	
Hot water supply boilers, gas and oil	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and < 10 gal	80% E_t	Section G.1 and G.2 of ANSI Z21.10.3
Hot water supply boilers, gas	≥ 300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	≥ 4,000 Btu/h/gal and ≥ 10 gal	80% E_t (Q/800 + 110$\sqrt{V}$)SL, Btu/h	
Hot water supply boilers, oil	> 300,000 Btu/h and < 12,500,000 Btu/h	> 4,000 Btu/h/gal and > 10 gal	78% E_t (Q/800 + 110$\sqrt{V}$)SL, Btu/h	
Pool heaters, gas and oil	All	—	82% E_t	ASHRAE 146
Heat pump pool heaters	All	—	4.0 COP	AHRI 1160
Unfired storage tanks[h]	All	—	Minimum insulation requirement R-12.5 (h × ft² × °F)/Btu	(none)

For SI: °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8, 1 British thermal unit per hour = 0.2931 W, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 British thermal unit per hour per gallon = 0.078 W/L.

a. Energy factor (EF) and thermal efficiency (E_t) are minimum requirements. In the EF equation, *V* is the rated volume in gallons.

b. Standby loss (SL) is the maximum Btu/h based on a nominal 70°F temperature difference between stored water and ambient requirements. In the SL equation, Q is the nameplate input rate in Btu/h. In the SL equation for electric water heaters, *V* is the rated volume in gallons and Vm is the measured volume in gallons. In the SL equation for oil and gas water heaters and boilers, *V* is the rated volume in gallons.

c. Instantaneous water heaters with input rates below 200,000 Btu/h must comply with these requirements if the water heater is designed to heat water to temperatures 180°F or higher.

d. Electric water heaters with an input rating of 12kW (40,950 Btu/h) or less that are designed to heat water to temperatures of 180°F or greater shall comply with the requirements for electric water heaters that have an input rating greater than 12 kW.

e. A tabletop water heater is a water heater that is enclosed in a rectangular cabinet with a flat top surface not more than three feet (0.91 m) in height.

f. A grid-enabled water heater is an electric resistance water heater that meets all of the following:

1. Has a rated storage tank volume of more than 75 gallons.
2. Is manufactured on or after April 16, 2015.
3. Is equipped at the point of manufacture with an activation lock.
4. Bears a permanent label applied by the manufacturer that complies with all of the following:

4.1 Is made of material not adversely affected by water.

4.2 Is attached by means of non-water soluble adhesive.

4.3 Advises purchasers and end-users of the intended and appropriate use of the product with the following notice printed in 16.5 point Arial Narrow Bold font: "IMPORTANT INFORMATION: This water heater is intended only for use as a part of an electric thermal storage or demand response program. It will not provide adequate hot water unless enrolled in such a program and activated by your utility company or another program operator. Confirm the availability of a program in your local area before purchasing or installing this product."

g. %/h is the energy consumed to replace the heat lost from the tank while on standby, expressed as a percentage of the total energy in the stored water per hour.

h. In accordance with Section C404.6.1.

C404.2.1 High input-rated service water heating systems for other than Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies. In new buildings where the combined input rating of the water-heating equipment serving other than Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies installed in a building is equal to or greater than 1,000,000 Btu/h (293 kW), the combined input-capacity-weighted-average efficiency of water-heating equipment shall be no less than the following for each water heating fuel source:

1. Electric: A rated COP of not less than 2.0. For air-source heat pump equipment, the COP rating will be reported at the design leaving heat pump water temperature with an entering air temperature of 60°F (15.6°C) or less.
2. Fossil Fuel: A rated E_t of not less than 90 percent as determined by the applicable test procedures in Table C404.2.

SDCI Informative Note: Section C404.2.1 will remain in force only until December 31, 2021.

Exceptions:

1. Permits applied for on or after January 1, 2022.

((~~1~~)) 2. Where not less than 25 percent of the annual service water-heating requirement is provided from any of the following sources:

((~~1.1~~)) 2.1. Renewable energy generated on site that is not being used to satisfy another requirement of this code; or

((~~1.2~~)) 2.2. Site recovered energy that is not being used to satisfy other requirements of this code.

((~~2~~)) 3. Redundant equipment intended to only operate during equipment failure or periods of extended maintenance.

((~~3~~)) 4. Electric resistance heated systems installed as part of an alteration where the water heating equipment is installed at the grade level in a building with a height of four stories or greater.

((~~4~~)) 5. Hot water heat exchangers used to provide service water heating from a district utility (steam, heating hot water).

((~~5~~)) 6. Water heaters provided as an integral part of equipment intended to only heat or boost the heat of water used by that equipment.

((~~6~~)) 7. For electric heat systems, supplemental water heaters not meeting this criteria that function as auxiliary heating only when the outdoor temperature is below 32°F (0°C) or when a defrost cycle is required are not required to have a rated COP of 2.0. Such systems shall be sized and configured to lock out electric resistance or fossil fuel heating from operation when the outdoor temperature is above 32°F (0°C) unless the system is in defrost operation.

8. Electric instantaneous water heaters that serve toilet room handwashing lavatory faucets or kitchenette sink faucets without service water heating circulation systems and without water storage.

C404.2.2 High input-rated service water heating system for Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies.

SDCI Informative Note: Section C404.2.2 will remain in force only until December 31, 2021.

In new buildings with over 1,000,000 Btu/h installed service water heating capacity serving Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies, at least 25 percent of annual water heating energy shall be provided from any combination of the following water heating sources:

1. Renewable energy generated on site that is not being used to satisfy other requirements of this code; or
2. Site-recovered energy that is not being used to satisfy other requirements of this code.

Exceptions:

1. Permits applied for on or after January 1, 2022.
2. Compliance with this section is not required if the combined input-capacity-weighted average equipment rating for each service water heating fuel source type is not less than the following:

   2.1. Electric Resistance: An electric resistance water heater water with a rating of 105% of the rated efficiency of Table C404.2.

   2.2. Electric Heat Pump (10 CFR Part 430): A heat pump water heater rated in accordance with 10 CFR Part 430 with a rating of 105% of the rated efficiency of Table C404.2.

   2.3. Electric Heat Pump (not listed in accordance with 10 CFR Part 430): A heat pump water heater not rated in accordance with 10 CFR Part 430 shall have a COP of not less than 2.0. For air-source heat pump equipment the COP rating will be reported at the design leaving heat pump water temperature with an entering air temperature of 60°F (15.6°C) or less. Supplemental water heaters not meeting the above criteria that function as auxiliary heating only when the outdoor temperature is below 32°F (0°) or when a defrost cycle is required are not required to have a rated COP of 2.0. Such systems shall be sized and configured to lock out electric resistance or fossil fuel heating from operation when the outdoor temperature is above 32°F (0°C) unless the system is in defrost operation.

   2.4. Fossil Fuels: A rated Et of not less than 90% as determined by the applicable test procedures in Table C404.2.

   2.5. Hot water heat exchangers used to provide service water heating from a district utility (steam, heating hot water).

C404.2.3 Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies with central service water heating systems. In buildings with central service water heating systems serving four or more Group R-1 or R-2 dwelling or sleeping units, the primary water heating equipment shall not use fossil fuel combustion or electric resistance. Service hot water shall be provided by an air-source heat pump water heating (HPWH) system meeting the requirements of this section. Supplemental service water heating equipment is permitted to use electric resistance in compliance with Section C404.2.3.4.

Exceptions:

1. Permits applied for prior to January 1, 2022.
2. Solar thermal, wastewater heat recovery, other *approved* waste heat recovery, ground source heat pump, water-source heat pump system utilizing waste heat, and combinations thereof, are permitted to offset all or any portion of the required HPWH capacity where such systems comply with this code and the Seattle Plumbing Code.
3. Systems meeting the requirements of the Northwest Energy Efficiency Alliance (NEEA) Advanced Water Heater Specifications for central service water heating systems.

SDCI Informative Note: As of the publication of this code, publication of the NEEA AWHS for central service water heating systems is still pending. See https://neea.org/resources/advanced-water-heating-specification for updated information.

C404.2.3.1 Primary heat pump system sizing. The system shall include a primary service minimum output at 40°F outdoor air temperature that provides sufficient hot water for R-1 and/or R-2 occupancy uses as calculated using the equipment manufacturer's selection criteria or another *approved* methodology. Air source heat pumps shall be sized to deliver no less than 50 percent of the calculated demand for hot water production during the peak demand period when entering air temperature is 24°F.

Exception: 50 percent sizing at 24°F is not required for heat pumps located in a below-grade enclosed parking structure or other ventilated and unconditioned space that is not anticipated to fall below 40°F at any time.

SDCI Informative Note: Estimates of the appropriate heat pump system sizing and hot water storage volume for HPHW systems, calculated per bedroom or per occupant, vary widely, depending on type of use, output capacity of the heat pumps, and other factors.

C404.2.3.2 Primary hot water storage sizing. The system shall provide sufficient hot water, as calculated using an *approved* methodology, to satisfy peak demand period requirements.

C404.2.3.3 System design. The service water heating system shall be configured to conform to one of the following provisions:

1. For *single-pass* HPWHs, *temperature maintenance* heating provided for reheating return water from the building's heated water circulation system shall be physically decoupled from the primary service water heating system storage

tank(s) in a manner that prevents destratification of the primary system storage tanks. *Temperature maintenance* heating is permitted to be provided by electric resistance or a separate dedicated heat pump system.

2. For *multi-pass* HPWHs, recirculated *temperature maintenance* water is permitted to be returned to the primary water storage tanks for reheating.

C404.2.3.3.1 Mixing valve. A thermostatic mixing valve capable of supplying hot water to the building at the user temperature set point shall be provided, in compliance with requirements of the Seattle Plumbing Code and the HPWH manufacturer's installation guidelines. The mixing valve shall be sized and rated to deliver tempered water in a range from the minimum flow of the *temperature maintenance* recirculation system up to the maximum demand for the fixtures served.

C404.2.3.4 Supplemental water heaters. Total supplemental electric resistance water heating equipment shall not have an output capacity greater than the primary water heating equipment at 40°F entering air temperature. Supplemental electric resistance heating is permitted for the following uses:

1. *Temperature maintenance* of heated-water circulation systems, physically separate from the primary service water heating system. *Temperature maintenance* heating capacity shall be no greater than the primary water heating capacity at 40°F.
2. Defrost of compressor coils.
3. Heat tracing of piping for freeze protection or for *temperature maintenance* in lieu of recirculation of hot water.
4. Backup or low ambient temperature conditions, where all of the following are true:
    a. The supplemental heating capacity is no greater than the primary service water heating capacity at 40°F.
    b. During normal operations the supplemental heating is controlled to operate only when the entering air temperature at the air-source HPWH is below 40°F, and the primary HPWH compressor continues to operate together with the supplemental heating when the entering air temperature is between 17°F and 40°F.
    c. The primary water heating equipment cannot satisfy the system load due to equipment failure or entering air temperature below 40°F.
5. Supplemental heating downstream from a *multi-pass* HPWH system.
6. Stand-alone electric water heaters serving single zones not served by the central water heating system.

C404.2.3.5 Alarms. The control system shall be capable of and configured to send *automatic* error alarms to building or maintenance personnel upon detection of equipment faults, low leaving water temperature from primary storage tanks, or low hot water supply delivery temperature to building distribution system.

C404.3 Efficient heated water supply piping. Heated water supply piping shall be in accordance with Section C404.3.1 or C404.3.2. The flow rate through 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) piping shall be not greater than 0.5 gpm (1.9 L/m). The flow rate through 5/16-inch (7.9 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1 gpm (3.8 L/m). The flow rate through 3/8-inch (9.5 mm) piping shall be not greater than 1.5 gpm (5.7 L/m). Water heaters, circulating water systems and heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be considered sources of heated water.

C404.3.1 Maximum allowable pipe length method. The maximum allowable piping length from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be in accordance with the following. Where the piping contains more than one size of pipe, the largest size of pipe within the piping shall be used for determining the maximum allowable length of the piping in Table C404.3.1.

1. For a public lavatory faucet, use the "Public lavatory faucets" column in Table C404.3.1.
2. For all other plumbing fixtures and plumbing appliances, use the "Other fixtures and appliances" column in Table C404.3.1.

TABLE C404.3.1
PIPING VOLUME AND MAXIMUM PIPING LENGTHS

NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches)	VOLUME (liquid ounces per foot length)	MAXIMUM PIPING LENGTH (feet)	
		Public lavatory faucets	Other fixtures and appliances
1/4	0.33	6	50
5/16	0.5	4	50
3/8	0.75	3	50
1/2	1.5	((~~2~~)) 8	43
5/8	2	((~~1~~)) 8	32
3/4	3	0.5	21
7/8	4	0.5	16
1	5	0.5	13
1-1/4	8	0.5	8
1-1/2	11	0.5	6
2 or larger	18	0.5	4

C404.3.2 Maximum allowable pipe volume method. The water volume in the piping shall be calculated in accordance with Section C404.3.2.1. The volume from the nearest source of heated water to the termination of the fixture supply pipe shall be as follows:

1. For a public lavatory faucet: Not more than 2 ounces (0.06 L).
2. For other plumbing fixtures or plumbing appliances; not more than 0.5 gallon (1.89 L).

C404.3.2.1 Water volume determination. The volume shall be the sum of the internal volumes of pipe, fittings, valves, meters and manifolds between the nearest source of heated water and the termination of the fixture supply pipe. The volume in the piping shall be determined from the "Volume" column in Table C404.3.1. The volume contained within fixture shutoff valves, within flexible water supply connectors to a fixture fitting and within a fixture fitting shall not be included in the water volume determination. Where heated water is supplied by a recirculating system or heat-traced piping, the volume shall include the portion of the fitting on the branch pipe that supplies water to the fixture.

C404.4 Heat traps for hot water storage tanks. Storage tank-type water heaters and hot water storage tanks that have vertical water pipes connecting to the inlet and outlet of the tank shall be provided with integral heat traps at ((~~those~~)) such vertical inlets and outlets or shall have pipe-configured heat traps in the piping connected to those inlets and outlets. Tank inlets and outlets associated with solar water heating system circulation loops shall not be required to have heat traps.

C404.5 Water heater installation. Electric water heaters in unconditioned spaces or on concrete floors shall be placed on an incompressible, insulated surface with a minimum thermal resistance of R-10.

C404.6 Insulation of piping. Piping from a water heater to the termination of the heated water fixture supply pipe shall be insulated in accordance with Table C403.10.3. On both the inlet and outlet piping of a storage hot water heater or heated water storage tank, the piping to a heat trap or the first 8 feet (2438 mm) of piping, whichever is less, shall be insulated. Piping that is heat traced shall be insulated in accordance with Table C403.10.3 or the heat trace manufacturer's instructions. Tubular pipe insulation shall be installed in accordance with the insulation manufacturer's instructions. Pipe insulation shall be continuous, including through hangers and supports, such that thermal bridging is prevented, except where the piping passes through a framing member. The minimum insulation thickness requirements of this section shall not supersede any greater insulation thickness requirements necessary for the protection of piping from freezing temperatures or the protection of personnel against external surface temperatures on the insulation.

Exception: Tubular pipe insulation shall not be required on the following:

1. The tubing from the connection at the termination of the fixture supply piping to a plumbing fixture or plumbing appliance.
2. Valves, pumps, strainers and threaded unions in piping that is 1 inch (25 mm) or less in nominal diameter.
3. Piping from user-controlled shower and bath mixing valves to the water outlets.
4. Cold-water piping of a demand recirculation water system.
5. Tubing from a hot drinking-water heating unit to the water outlet.
6. Piping at locations where a vertical support of the piping is installed.
7. Piping surrounded by building insulation with a thermal resistance (*R*-value) of not less than R-3.
8. Hot water piping that is part of the final pipe run to the plumbing fixture and is not part of the heated-water circulation system circulation path is not required to meet the minimum insulation requirements of Section C404.6.

C404.6.1 Storage tank insulation. Unfired storage tanks used to store service hot water at temperatures above 130°F shall be wrapped with an insulating product, installed in accordance with the insulation manufacturer's instructions and providing a minimum of R-2 additional insulation for every 10°F increase in stored water temperature above 130°F. Such additional insulation is also permitted to be integral to the tank. The insulation is permitted to be discontinuous at structural supports.

C404.7 Heated-water circulating and temperature maintenance systems. Heated-water circulation systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.7.1. Heat trace temperature maintenance systems shall be in accordance with Section C404.7.2. Controls for hot water storage shall be in accordance with Section C404.7.3. *Automatic* controls, temperature sensors and pumps shall be in a location with *access.* Manual controls shall be in a location with *ready access.*

C404.7.1 Circulation systems. Heated-water circulation systems shall be provided with a circulation pump. The system return pipe shall be a dedicated return pipe. Gravity and thermo-syphon circulation systems shall be prohibited. Controls shall start the pump based on the identification of a demand for hot water within the occupancy, according to the requirements of Sections C404.7.1.1 and C404.7.1.2.

C404.7.1.1 Single riser systems. Where the circulation system serves only a single domestic hot water riser or zone, the following controls shall be provided:

1. Control to automatically turn off the pump when the water in the circulation loop is at the supply temperature and shall not turn the pump back on until the temperature is a minimum of 10°F lower than the supply temperature or have controls equipped with *automatic* time switches or other controls that can be set to switch off the pump during unoccupied hours when hot water is not required.
2. Control shall be equipped with manual switch or other controls that can be used to turn off the pump during extended periods when hot water is not required.

C404.7.1.2 Multiple riser systems. Where the circulation system serves multiple domestic hot water risers or piping zones, controls shall be provided such that they can be set to switch off the pump during extended periods when hot water is not required. System shall include means for balancing the flow rate through each individual hot water supply riser or piping zone. For heated water circulation systems that have multiple risers and use a variable flow circulation pump, each riser shall have a self-actuating thermostatic balancing valve.

C404.7.1.3 Electronic thermostatic mixing valve (TMV). Where a heated water circulation system utilizes an electronic TMV to control the temperature of hot water supplied to the building, the TMV shall be configured so that it either reverts closed (fully COLD) or maintains its current valve position upon power failure or cessation of circulation flow.

C404.7.2 Heat trace systems. Electric heat trace systems shall comply with IEEE 515.1. Controls for such systems shall be able to automatically adjust the energy input to the heat tracing to maintain the desired water temperature in the piping in accordance with the times when heated water is used in the occupancy. Heat trace shall be arranged to be turned off automatically when there is no hot water demand.

C404.7.3 Controls for hot water storage. The controls on pumps that circulate water between a water heater and a heated-water storage tank shall limit operation of the pump from heating cycle startup to not greater than 5 minutes after the end of the cycle.

C404.7.3.1 Pipe insulation. For heated water circulation systems, both supply and return pipe insulation shall be at minimum 1.0 inch thicker than that required by Table C403.10.3.

Exception: Where piping is centered within a wall, ceiling, or floor framing cavity with a depth at least 4 inches greater than the diameter of the pipe and that is completely filled with batt or blown-in insulation, additional pipe insulation is not required.

C404.8 Demand recirculation controls. *Demand recirculation water systems* ((~~shall have controls that comply with both of the following:~~)) are not permitted.

((~~1. The controls shall start the pump upon receiving a signal from the action of a user of a fixture or appliance, sensing the presence of a user of a fixture or sensing the flow of hot or tempered water to a fixture fitting or appliance.~~

~~2. The controls shall limit the temperature of the water entering the cold water piping to not greater than 104°F (40°C)~~))

C404.9 Domestic hot water meters. Each individual dwelling unit in a Group R-2 occupancy with central service domestic hot water systems shall be provided with a domestic hot water meter to allow for domestic hot water billing based on actual domestic hot water usage.

Exception: Dwelling units in other than Group R-2 multi-family and live/work units are not required to provide domestic hot water metering at each dwelling unit where domestic hot water is metered separately for each of the following building end uses:

1. Dwelling units.
2. Sleeping units.
3. Commercial kitchens.

4. Central laundries.

C404.10 Drain water heat recovery units. Drain water heat recovery units shall comply with CSA B55.2. Potable water-side pressure loss shall be less than 10 psi (69 kPa) at maximum design flow. For Group R occupancies, the efficiency of drain water heat recovery unit efficiency shall be in accordance with CSA B55.1.

C404.11 Energy consumption of pools and permanent spas. The energy consumption of pools and permanent spas shall be controlled by the requirements in Sections C404.11.1 through C404.11.4.

C404.11.1 Heaters. Pool water heaters using electric resistance heating as the primary source of heat are prohibited for pools over 2,000 gallons. Heat pump pool heaters shall have a minimum COP of 4.0 at 50°F db, 44.2°F wb outdoor air and 80°F entering water, determined in accordance with ((~~ASHRAE Standard 146~~)) AHRI Standard 1160, Performance Rating of Heat Pump Pool Heaters. Other pool heating equipment shall comply with the applicable efficiencies in Section C404.2.

The electric power to all heaters shall be controlled by an on-off switch that is an integral part of the heater, mounted on the exterior of the heater, or external to and within 3 feet of the heater in a location with *ready access.* Operation of such switch shall not change the setting of the heater thermostat. Such switches shall be in addition to a circuit breaker for the power to the heater. Gas fired heaters shall not be equipped with constant burning pilot lights.

C404.11.2 Time switches. Time switches or other control methods that can automatically turn off and on heaters and pump motors according to a preset schedule shall be installed for heaters and pump motors. Heaters and pump motors that have built in time switches shall be in compliance with this section.

Exceptions:

1. Where public health standards require 24-hour pump operation.
2. Pumps that are required to operate solar- and waste-heat-recovery pool heating systems.

C404.11.3 Covers. Heated pools and in-ground permanent spas shall be provided with a vapor-retardant cover on or at the water surface. Pools heated to more than 90°F shall have a pool cover with a minimum insulation value of R-12, and the sides and bottom of the pool shall also have a minimum insulation value of R-12.

C404.11.4 Heat recovery. Heated indoor swimming pools, spas or hot tubs with water surface area greater than 200 square feet shall provide for energy conservation by an exhaust air heat recovery system that heats ventilation air, pool water or domestic hot water. The heat recovery system shall be configured to decrease the exhaust air temperature at design heating conditions (80°F indoor) by 36°F (10°C).

Exception: Pools, spas or hot tubs that include system(s) that provide equivalent recovered energy on an annual basis through one of the following methods:

1. Solar water heating systems not claimed in Section C406.5 or Section C407;
2. Dehumidification heat recovery;
3. Waste heat recovery; or
4. A combination of these system sources capable of and configured to provide at least 70 percent of the heating energy required over an operating season.

C404.12 Energy consumption of portable spas. The energy consumption of electric-powered portable spas shall be controlled by the requirements of APSP 14.

C404.13 Service water pressure-booster systems. Service water pressure-booster systems shall be designed and configured such that the following apply:

1. One or more pressure sensors shall be used to vary pump speed and/or start and stop pumps. The sensors shall either be located near the critical fixtures that determine the pressure required, or logic shall be employed that adjusts the set point to simulate operations of remote sensors.
2. No devices shall be installed for the purpose of reducing the pressure of all of the water supplied by any booster system pump or booster system, except for safety devices.
3. Booster system pumps shall not operate when there is no service water flow except to refill hydro pneumatic tanks.
4. Systems pump motors 7.5 hp and greater shall be provided with variable flow capacity in accordance with Section C403.2.3.

C404.14 Commissioning. Service water heating systems shall be commissioned in accordance with Section C408.

SECTION C405
ELECTRICAL POWER AND LIGHTING SYSTEMS

C405.1 General. This section covers lighting system controls, the maximum lighting power for interior and exterior applications, electrical energy consumption, vertical and horizontal transportation systems, and minimum efficiencies for motors and transformers. Receptacles shall be controlled according to Section C405.10. *Controlled receptacles* and lighting systems shall be

commissioned according to Section C405.12. Solar readiness shall be provided according to Section C411 and renewable energy shall be provided according to Section C412.

Dwelling units within multi-family buildings shall comply with Sections C405.1.1 and C405.7. All other dwelling units in dormitory, hotel and other residential occupancies that are not classified as multi-family residential occupancies shall comply with Section C405.2.5 and Section C405.1.1 or Section C405.4. *Sleeping units* shall comply with Section C405.2.5 and Section C405.1.1 or Section C405.4.

Lighting installed in *walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers* and *refrigerated warehouse freezers* shall comply with the lighting requirements of Section C410.2.

Transformers, uninterruptable power supplies, motors and electrical power processing equipment in data center systems shall comply with Section 8 of ASHRAE Standard 90.4 in addition to this code.

C405.1.1 Dwelling and sleeping unit lighting efficacy. No less than 90 percent of the lamps serving *dwelling units* or *sleeping units* shall be provided by light emitting diodes (LED), T-8 or smaller diameter linear fluorescent lamps, or other lamps with a minimum efficacy of 65 lumens per watt.

C405.2 Lighting controls. Lighting systems shall be provided with controls that comply with ((~~one~~)) item 1 or item 2 of the following:

1. Lighting controls as specified in Sections C405.2.1 through C405.2.7. In addition, any contiguous open office area larger than 5,000 square feet shall have its general lighting controlled by either:
   1.1. An enhanced digital lighting control system conforming to the requirements of Section C406.4; or
   1.2. Luminaire-level lighting controls (LLLC) conforming to the requirements in Item 2 of this subsection.
2. *Luminaire level lighting controls (LLLC)* for all areas and lighting controls as specified in Sections C405.2.1, C405.2.3 and C405.2.5. The *LLLC luminaires* shall be independently configured to:
   2.1. Monitor occupant activity to brighten or dim lighting when occupied or unoccupied, respectively.
   2.2. Monitor ambient light, both electric and daylight, and brighten or dim artificial light to maintain desired light level. A maximum of 8 fixtures are permitted to be controlled together to maintain uniform light levels within a single *daylight zone.*
   2.3. For each control strategy, be capable of configuration and re-configuration of performance parameters including: bright and dim set points, timeouts, dimming fade rates, sensor sensitivity adjustments, and wireless zoning configuration.

Exception to Section C405.2: Except for specific application controls required by Section C405.2.5, lighting controls are not required for the following:

1. Areas designated as security or emergency areas that are required to be continuously lighted.
2. Means of egress illumination serving the exit access that does not exceed ((~~0.02~~)) 0.01 watts per square foot of building area is exempt from this requirement.
3. Emergency egress lighting that is normally off.
4. Industrial or manufacturing process areas, as may be required for production and safety.

C405.2.1 Occupant sensor controls. Occupant sensor controls shall be installed to control lights in the following space types:

1. Classrooms/lecture/training rooms.
2. Conference/meeting/multipurpose rooms.
3. Copy/print rooms.
4. Lounge/breakrooms.
5. Enclosed offices.
6. Open plan office areas.
7. Restrooms.
8. Storage rooms.
9. Locker rooms.
10. Other spaces 300 square feet (28 m^2) or less that are enclosed by floor-to- ceiling height partitions.
11. Warehouse storage areas.
12. Enclosed fire rated stairways.
13. Service corridors.
14. Covered parking areas.

Occupant sensor controls in warehouse storage areas, stairways, corridors and library stacks shall comply with Section C405.2.1.2. Occupant sensor controls in open plan office areas shall comply with Section C405.2.1.3. Occupant sensor controls in covered parking areas shall comply with Section C405.2.1.4. Occupant sensors in fire rated stairways shall comply with Section C405.2.1.5. Occupant sensor controls for all other spaces shall comply with Section C405.2.1.1.

Exceptions:

1. Corridors in manufacturing facilities.
2. General lighting and task lighting in shop and laboratory classrooms. **
3. Digital timer switch controls may be provided in lieu of occupant sensor controls in the following space types if under 300 square feet: copy/print rooms, storage rooms and janitorial closets.

   Digital timer switches shall comply with the following:

   3.1. Turn lights on or off with operation of a button, switch or other manual means.

   3.2. Automatically turn lights off within 15 minutes of the lights being turned on. The means for setting the time delay shall not be visible on the front of the switch.

   3.3. The switch shall provide both audible and visual indication of impending time-out of the switch. Audible and visual indication shall be given at least once within five minutes of time-out of the switch. Visual indication shall consist of turning the lights momentarily off, and then back on.

C405.2.1.1 Occupant sensor control function. Occupant sensor controls shall comply with all of the following:

1. They shall be configured to automatically turn off lights within 20 minutes of all occupants leaving the space.
2. They shall be manual on or shall be configured to automatically turn the lighting on to not more than 50 percent power.

   Exception: Full *automatic*-on controls shall be permitted to control lighting in public corridors, stairways, restrooms, primary *building entrance* areas and lobbies, parking garages, and areas where manual-on operation would endanger the safety or security of the room or building occupants.
3. They shall incorporate a manual control to allow occupants to turn lights off.

C405.2.1.2 Occupant sensor control function in warehouses, storage areas and service corridors. Occupant sensor controls shall be configured to comply with all of the following:

1. Automatically reduce lighting power by not less than 50 percent within 20 minutes of all occupants leaving the area.
2. Control lighting in each aisleway and corridor independently, and shall not control lighting beyond the aisleway or corridor being controlled by the sensor.
3. Automatically turn lighting off within 20 minutes of all occupants leaving the space, or comply with Section C405.2.2 to turn lighting off when the building is vacant.
4. Restore lighting to full power when occupants enter the space.

C405.2.1.3 Occupant sensor control function in open plan office areas. Occupant sensor controls in open plan office spaces less than 300 square feet (28 m^2) in area shall comply with Section C405.2.1.1. Occupant sensor controls in all other open plan office spaces shall be configured to comply with all of the following:

1. General lighting is controlled separately in control zones with floor areas not greater than 600 square feet (55 m^2) within the open plan office space.
2. Automatically turn off general lighting in all control zones within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the open plan office space.
3. General lighting power in each control zone is reduced by not less than 80 percent of the full zone general lighting power within 20 minutes of all occupants leaving that control zone. Control functions that switch control zone lights completely off when the zone is unoccupied meet this requirement.
4. *Daylight responsive controls* activate open plan office space general lighting or control zone general lighting only when occupancy for the same area is detected.
5. Lighting controls in open plan office areas larger than 5,000 square feet must also comply with Section C405.2(1).

C405.2.1.4 Occupant sensor control function in parking garages. Occupant sensor controls shall be configured to comply with all of the following:

1. Lighting power of each *luminaire* shall be automatically reduced by a minimum of 30 percent when there is no vehicle or pedestrian activity detected within a lighting zone for 20 minutes. Lighting zones for this requirement shall be no larger than 3600 square feet.

   Exceptions:

   4.1 Lighting in daylight transition zones and ramps without parking.

4.2 Covered parking garages with a total lighting power less than 0.07 watts per square foot.

2. Where time switch controls in accordance with Section C405.2.2 are not installed, the occupant sensor shall automatically turn all the lighting off within 20 minutes of all occupants leaving the space and restore lighting to full power when occupants enter the space.

C405.2.1.5 Occupant sensor control function in enclosed fire rated stairways. Occupant sensor controls shall be configured to automatically reduce lighting power by not less than 50 percent when no occupants have been detected in the stairway for a period not exceeding 20 minutes and restore lighting to full power when occupants enter the stairway. All portions of stairways shall remain illuminated to meet the requirements of Section 1009 of the *International Building Code* when the lighting power is reduced.

C405.2.2 Time switch controls. Each area of the building that is not provided with *occupant sensor controls* or digital timer switch controls complying with Section C405.2.1 shall be provided with time switch controls complying with Section C405.2.2.1.

Exception: Where a manual control provides light reduction in accordance with Section C405.2.3.1, time-switch controls shall not be required for the following:

1. Spaces where patient care is directly provided.
2. Spaces where an *automatic* shutoff would endanger occupant safety or security.
3. Lighting intended for continuous operation.
4. Shop and laboratory classrooms.

C405.2.2.1 Time switch control function. Time switch controls shall comply with the following:

1. Have a minimum 7 day clock.
2. Be capable of being set for 7 different day types per week.
3. Incorporate an *automatic* holiday "shut-off" feature, which turns off all controlled loads for at least 24 hours and then resumes normally scheduled operations.
4. Have program back-up capabilities, which prevent the loss of program and time settings for at least 10 hours, if power is interrupted.
5. Include an override switching device that complies with the following:
   5.1 The override switch shall be a manual control.
   5.2 The override switch, when initiated, shall permit the controlled lighting to remain on for not more than 2 hours.
   5.3 Any individual override switch shall control the lighting for an area not larger than ((~~5,000~~)) 2,500 square feet (((~~465~~)) 232 m^2).
6. Time switch controls are allowed to automatically turn on lighting to full power in corridors, lobbies, restrooms, storage rooms less than 50 square feet, and medical areas of healthcare facilities. In all other spaces, time switch controls are allowed to automatically turn on the lighting to not more than 50 percent power.

Exception: Within mall concourses, auditoriums, sales areas, manufacturing facilities, pools, gymnasiums, skating rinks and sports arenas:

1.1. The time limit shall be permitted to be greater than 2 hours provided the switch is a captive key device.

1.2. The area controlled by the override switch shall not be limited to 5,000 square feet (465 m^2) provided that such area is less than 20,000 square feet (1860 m^2).

C405.2.3 Manual controls. Stairwells and parking garages are not permitted to use manual switches. All other lighting shall have manual controls complying with the following:

1. They shall be in a location with *ready access* to occupants.
2. They shall be located where the controlled lights are visible, or shall identify the area served by the lights and indicate their status.
3. Each control device shall control an area no larger than a single room or 2,500 square feet, whichever is less, if the room area is less than or equal to 10,000 square feet; or one-quarter of the room or 10,000 square feet, whichever is less, if the room area is greater than 10,000 square feet.

Exceptions:

1. A manual control may be installed in a remote location for the purpose of safety or security provided each remote control device has an indicator pilot light as part of or next to the control device and the light is clearly labeled to identify the controlled lighting.
2. Restrooms.

C405.2.3.1 Light reduction controls. Manual controls shall be configured to provide light reduction control that allows the occupant to reduce the connected lighting load between 30 and 70 percent. Lighting reduction shall be achieved by one of the following *approved* methods:

1. Controlling all lamps or luminaires.
2. Dual switching of alternate rows of luminaires, alternate luminaires or alternate lamps.
3. Switching the middle lamp in three-lamp luminaires independently of the outer lamps.
4. Switching each luminaire or each lamp.

Exceptions:

1. Light reduction controls are not required in *daylight zones* with *daylight responsive controls* complying with Section C405.2.4. **
2. Where provided with manual control, the following areas are not required to have light reduction control:
   2.1. Spaces that have only one luminaire with a rated power of less than 100 watts.
   2.2. Spaces that use less than 0.6 watts per square foot (6.5 W/m^2).
   2.3. Lighting in corridors, lobbies, electrical rooms, restrooms, storage rooms, airport concourse baggage areas, dwelling and sleeping rooms and mechanical rooms.

C405.2.4 Daylight responsive controls. *Daylight responsive controls* complying with Section C405.2.4.1 shall be provided to control the lighting within *daylight zones* in the following spaces:

1. Sidelit zones as defined in Section C405.2.4.2 with more than two general lighting fixtures within the combined primary and secondary sidelit zones.
2. Toplit zones as defined in Section C405.2.4.3 with more than two general lighting fixtures within the daylight zone.

Exception: *Daylight responsive controls* are not required for the following:

1. Spaces in health care facilities where patient care is directly provided.
2. Lighting that is required to have specific application control in accordance with Section C405.2.5.
3. Sidelit zones on the first floor above grade in Group A-2 and Group M occupancies where the *fenestration* adjoins a sidewalk or other outdoor pedestrian area, provided that the light fixtures are controlled separately from the general area lighting.
4. *Daylight zones* where the total proposed lighting power density is less than 35 percent of the lighting power allowance per Section C405.4.2.

C405.2.4.1 Daylight responsive controls function. Where required, daylight responsive controls shall be provided within each space for control of lights in that space and shall comply with all of the following:

1. Lights in primary sidelit zones shall be controlled independently of lights in secondary sidelit zones in accordance with Section C405.2.4.2.

   Exception: Spaces enclosed by walls or ceiling height partitions with no more than three general lighting fixtures may have combined daylight zone control of primary and secondary daylight zones provided *uniform illumination* can be achieved.
2. Lights in toplit zones in accordance with Section C405.2.4.3 shall be controlled independently of lights in sidelit zones in accordance with Section C405.2.4.2.
3. *Daylight responsive controls* within each space shall be configured so that they can be calibrated from within that space by authorized personnel.
4. Calibration mechanisms shall be in a location with *ready access.*
5. *Daylight responsive controls* shall be configured to completely shut off all controlled lights in that zone.
6. Lights in sidelit zones in accordance with Section C405.2.4.2 facing different cardinal orientations (i.e., within 45 degrees of due north, east, south, west) shall be controlled independently of each other.

   Exception: Up to two light fixtures in each space are permitted to be controlled together with lighting in a daylight zone facing a different cardinal orientation.
7. Incorporate time-delay circuits to prevent cycling of light level changes of less than three minutes.
8. The maximum area a single daylight responsive control device serves shall not exceed 2,500 square feet (232 m^2) and no more than 60 lineal feet (18.3 m) of facade.
9. Occupant override capability of daylight dimming controls is not permitted, other than a reduction of light output from the level established by the daylighting controls.

10. Daylight responsive controls shall be set initially to activate at 30 footcandles (323 lux) or not more than 110 percent of the illuminance level specified on the construction documents.

C405.2.4.1.1 Dimming. *Daylight responsive controls* shall be configured to automatically reduce the power of *general lighting* in the *daylight zone* in response to available daylight, while maintaining *uniform illumination* in the space through one of the following methods:

1. Continuous dimming using dimming ballasts/dimming drivers and daylight-sensing *automatic* controls. The system shall reduce lighting power continuously to less than 15 percent of rated power at maximum light output.
2. Stepped dimming using multi-level switching and daylight-sensing controls. The system shall provide a minimum of two steps of uniform illumination between 0 and 100 percent of rated power at maximum light output. Each step shall be in equal increments of power, plus or minus 10 percent.

General lighting within daylight zones in offices, classrooms, laboratories and library reading rooms shall use the continuous dimming method. Stepped dimming is not allowed as a method of daylight zone control in these spaces.

C405.2.4.2 Sidelit zone. The sidelit zone is the floor area adjacent to *vertical fenestration* which complies with the following:

1. Where the *fenestration* is located in a wall, the sidelit zone includes the primary and secondary daylight zones. The primary daylight zone shall extend laterally to the nearest full height wall, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the top of the fenestration, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest full height wall, * or up to 2 feet (610 mm), whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.2(1). The secondary daylight zone begins at the edge of the primary daylight zone and extends laterally to the nearest full height wall, or up to 2.0 times the height from the floor to the top of the fenestration, whichever is less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.2(1).
2. Where *clerestory fenestration* is located in a wall, the sidelit zone includes a lateral area twice the depth of the clerestory fenestration height, projected upon the floor at a 45 degree angle from the center of the clerestory fenestration. The longitudinal width of the sidelit zone is calculated the same as for fenestration located in a wall. Where the 45 degree angle is interrupted by an obstruction greater than 0.7 times the ceiling height, the daylight zone shall remain the same lateral area but be located between the clerestory and the obstruction, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.2(2).
3. If the rough opening area of a vertical fenestration assembly is less than 10 percent of the calculated primary sidelit zone area for this fenestration, it does not qualify as a sidelit zone.
4. The visible transmittance of the fenestration is no less than 0.20.
5. In parking garages with floor area adjacent to perimeter wall openings, the sidelit zone shall include the area within 20 feet of any portion of a perimeter wall that has a net opening to wall ratio of at least 40 percent.

C405.2.4.3 Toplit zone. The toplit zone is the floor area underneath a roof fenestration assembly which complies with the following:

1. The toplit zone shall extend laterally and longitudinally beyond the edge of the roof fenestration assembly to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.7 times the ceiling height, whichever is ** less, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.3(1).
2. Where the fenestration is located in a rooftop monitor, the toplit zone shall extend laterally to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 1.0 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the fenestration, whichever is less, and longitudinally from the edge of the fenestration to the nearest obstruction that is taller than 0.7 times the ceiling height, or up to 0.25 times the height from the floor to the bottom of the *fenestration*, whichever is less, as indicated in Figures C405.2.4.3(2) and C405.2.4.3(3).
3. Where toplit zones overlap with sidelit zones, lights within the overlapping area shall be assigned to the toplit zone.
4. The product of the *visible transmittance* of the roof fenestration assembly and the area of the rough opening of the roof fenestration assembly, divided by the area of the toplit zone is no less than 0.008.
5. Where located under atrium fenestration, the toplit zone shall include the bottom floor area directly beneath the atrium fenestration, and the top floor directly under the atrium fenestration, as indicated in Figure C405.2.4.3(4). The toplit zone area at the top floor is calculated the same as for a toplit zone. Intermediate levels below the top floor that are not directly beneath the atrium are not included.

FIGURE C405.2.4.2(1)
SIDELIT ZONE ADJACENT TO FENESTRATION IN A WALL

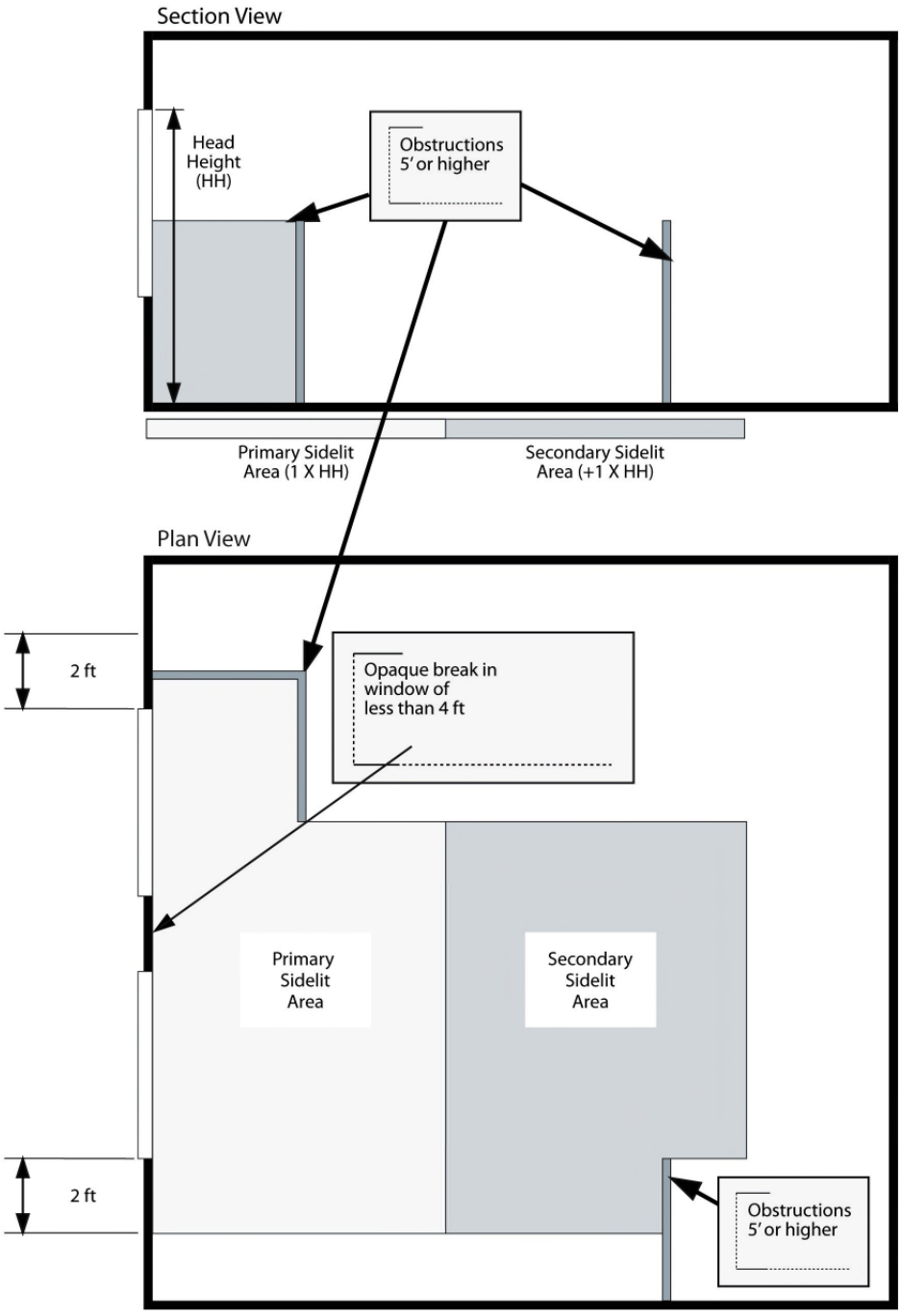
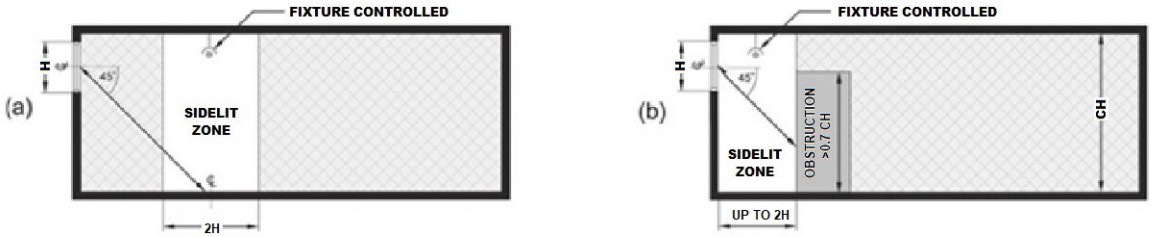


FIGURE C405.2.4.2(2)
SIDELIT ZONE ADJACENT TO CLERESTORY FENESTRATION IN A WALL



(a) Section view
(b) Section view with obstruction

FIGURE C405.2.4.3(1)
TOPLIT ZONE UNDER A ROOFTOP FENESTRATION ASSEMBLY

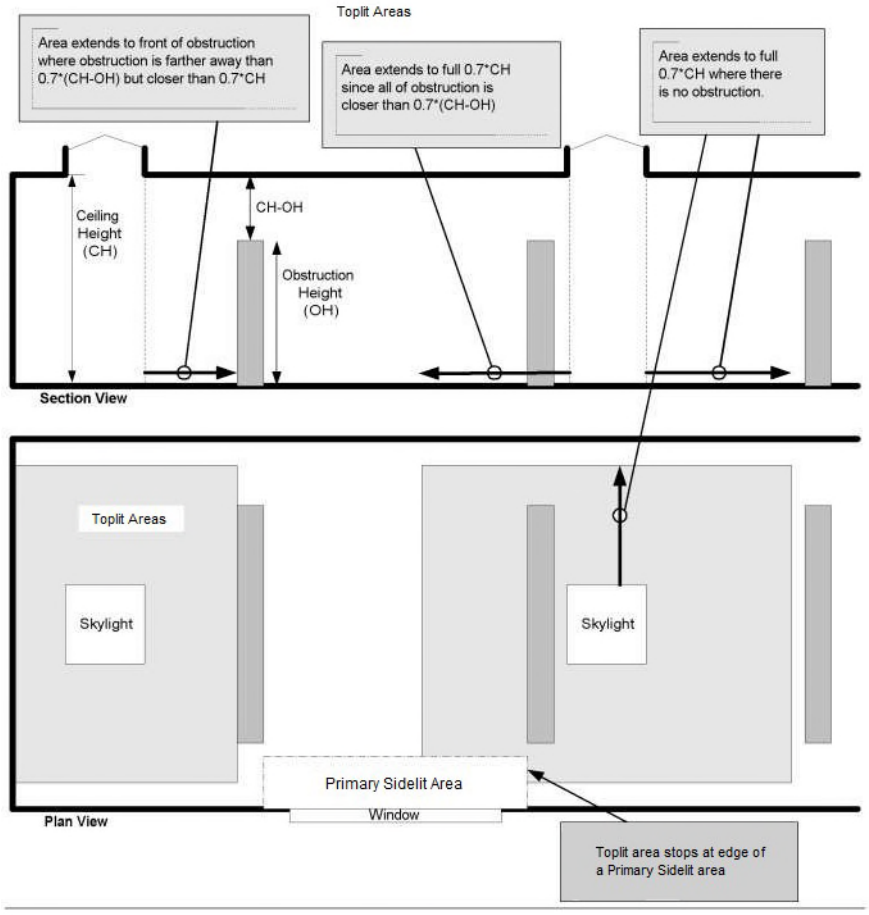
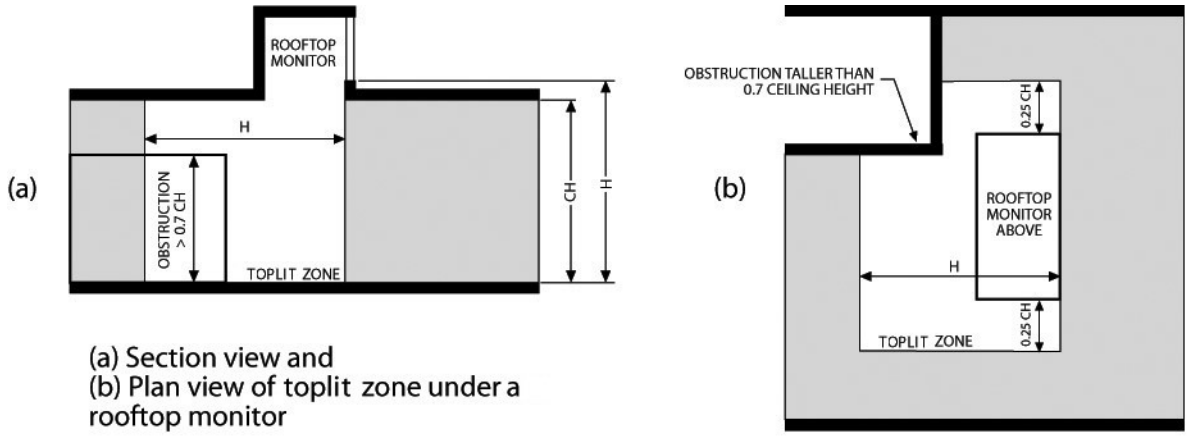
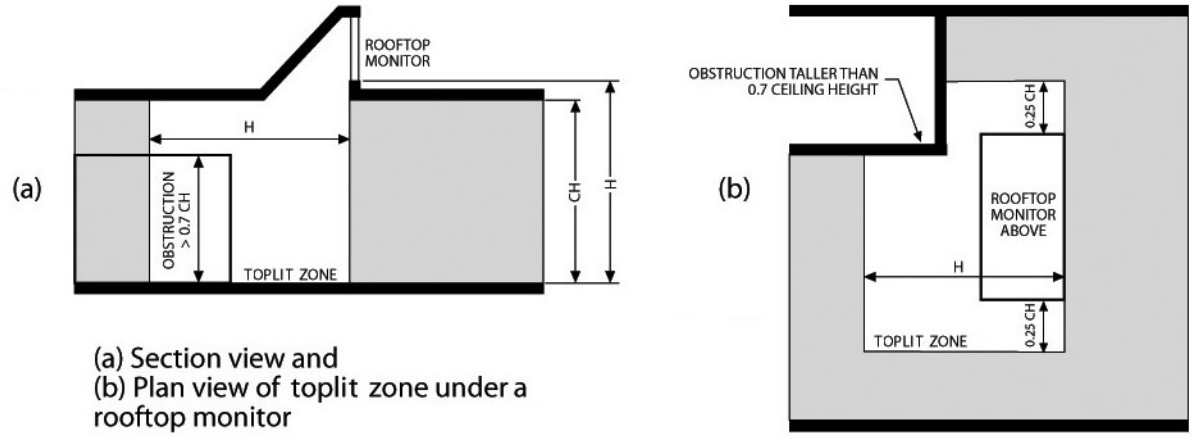


FIGURE C405.2.4.3(2)
TOPLIT ZONE UNDER A ROOFTOP MONITOR



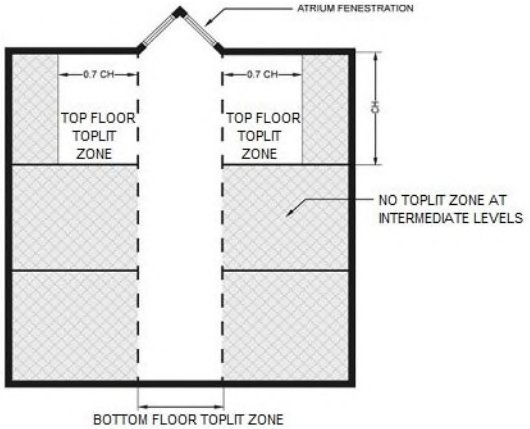
(a) Section view and
(b) Plan view of toplit zone under a rooftop monitor

FIGURE C405.2.4.3(3)
TOPLIT ZONE UNDER A SLOPED ROOFTOP MONITOR



(a) Section view and
(b) Plan view of toplit zone under a rooftop monitor

FIGURE C405.2.4.3(4)
TOPLIT ZONE UNDER ATRIUM FENESTRATION



C405.2.5 Additional lighting controls. Specific application lighting shall be provided with controls, in addition to controls required by other sections, for the following:

1. The following lighting shall be controlled by an occupant sensor complying with Section C405.2.1.1 or a time-switch control complying with Section C405.2.2.1 In addition, a manual control shall be provided to control such lighting separately from the general lighting in the space:
   1.1. Display and accent.
   1.2. Lighting in display cases.
   1.3. Supplemental task lighting, including permanently installed under-shelf or under-cabinet lighting.
   1.4. Lighting equipment that is for sale or demonstration in lighting education.
2. *Sleeping units* shall have control devices or systems configured to automatically switch off all permanently installed luminaires and switched receptacles, including those installed within furniture, within 20 minutes after all occupants have left the unit.

   Exceptions:
   1. Lighting and switched receptacles controlled by card key controls.
   2. Spaces where patient care is directly provided.
3. Permanently installed luminaires within dwelling units shall be provided with controls complying with either Section C405.2.1.1 or C405.2.3.1.
4. Lighting for nonvisual applications, such as plant growth and food warming, shall be controlled by a dedicated control that is independent of the controls for other lighting within the room or space. ((~~Each control zone shall be no greater than the area served by a single luminaire or 4,000 square feet, whichever is larger.~~))
5. Luminaires serving the exit access and providing means of egress illumination required by Section 1006.1 of the *International Building Code*, including luminaires that function as both normal and emergency means of egress illumination shall be controlled by a combination of listed emergency relay and occupancy sensors, or signal from another building control system, that automatically shuts off the lighting when the areas served by that illumination are unoccupied.

   Exception: Means of egress illumination serving the exit access that does not exceed ((~~0.02~~)) 0.01 watts per square foot of building area is exempt from this requirement.

C405.2.6 Exterior lighting controls. Exterior lighting systems shall be provided with controls that comply with Sections C405.2.6.1 through C405.2.6.4. Decorative lighting systems shall comply with Sections C405.2.6.1, C405.2.6.2 and C405.2.6.4.

Exceptions:

1. Lighting for covered vehicle entrances or exits from buildings or parking structures where required for safety, security or eye adaption.
2. Lighting controlled from within dwelling units.

C405.2.6.1 Daylight shutoff. Lights shall be configured to automatically turn off when daylight is present and satisfies the lighting needs.

C405.2.6.2 Facade and landscape lighting shutoff. Building facade and landscape lighting shall be configured to automatically shut off ((~~for a minimum of 6 hours per night or from not later than one hour after business closing to not earlier than one hour before business opening, whichever is less~~)) between midnight or business/facility closing, whichever is later, and 6 a.m. or business/facility opening, whichever is earlier.

Exception: Areas where an *automatic* shutoff would endanger safety or security.

C405.2.6.3 Lighting setback. Lighting that is not controlled in accordance with Section C405.2.6.2 shall be controlled so that the total wattage of such lighting is automatically reduced by not less than 30 percent by selectively switching off or dimming luminaires at one of the following times:

1. From not later than 12 midnight to 6 a.m.
2. From not later than one hour after business closing to not earlier than one hour before business opening.
3. During any period when no activity has been detected for 15 minutes or more.

C405.2.6.4 Exterior time-switch control functions. Time switch controls for exterior lighting shall comply with the following:

1. They shall have a clock capable of being programmed for not fewer than 7 days.
2. They shall be capable of being set for seven different day types per week.
3. They shall incorporate an *automatic* holiday setback feature.

4. They shall have program backup capabilities that prevent the loss of program and time settings for a period of at least 10 hours in the event that power is interrupted.

C405.2.7 Area controls. The maximum lighting power that may be controlled from a single switch or *automatic* control device shall not exceed that which is provided by a 20 ampere circuit loaded to not more than 80 percent. A master control may be installed provided the individual switches retain their capability to function independently. Circuit breakers may not be used as the sole means of switching.

Exception: Areas less than 5 percent of the building footprint for footprints over 100,000 ft^2.

C405.3 Reserved

C405.4 Interior lighting power requirements. A building complies with this section if its total connected interior lighting power calculated under Section C405.4.1 is no greater than the interior lighting power allowance calculated under Section C405.4.2.

C405.4.1 Total connected interior lighting power. The total connected interior lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-10.

As an option, in areas of the building where all interior lighting equipment is fed from dedicated lighting branch circuits, the total connected interior lighting power is permitted to be calculated as the sum of the capacities of the lighting branch circuits serving those areas. For the purposes of this section, the connected interior lighting power of a 20-ampere circuit is considered to be 16 amperes, and that of a 15-ampere circuit is 12 amperes. Use of this alternative and the boundaries of the applicable areas shall be clearly documented on the electrical construction documents.

$$TCLP = [LVL + BLL + TRK + POE + \text{Other}] \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-10)}$$

Where:

TCLP = Total connected lighting power (watts)

LVL = For luminaires with lamps connected directly to building power, such as line voltage lamps, the rated wattage of the lamp, which must be minimum 60 lumen/watt.

BLL = For luminaires incorporating a ballast or transformer, the rated input wattage of the ballast or transformer when operating the lamp.

TRK = For lighting track, cable conductor, rail conductor and plug-in busway systems that allow the addition and relocation of luminaires without rewiring, the wattage shall be one of the following:

1. The specified wattage of the luminaires, but not less than 16 W/lin. ft. (52 W/lin. m).
2. The wattage limit of the permanent current-limiting devices protecting the system.
3. The wattage limit of the transformer supplying the system.

POE = For other modular lighting systems served with power supplied by a driver, power supply or transformer, including but not limited to low-voltage lighting systems, the wattage of the system shall be the maximum rated input wattage of the driver, power supply or transformer published in the manufacturer's catalogs, as specified by UL 2108 or 8750. For power-over-Ethernet lighting systems, power provided to installed non-lighting devices may be subtracted from the total power rating of the power-over-Ethernet system.

Other = The wattage of all other luminaires and lighting, sources not covered above and associated with interior lighting verified by data supplied by the manufacturer or other *approved* sources.

The connected power associated with the following lighting equipment and applications is not included in calculating total connected lighting power.

1. Television broadcast lighting for playing areas in sports arenas
2. Emergency lighting automatically off during normal building operation.
3. Lighting in spaces specifically designed for use by occupants with special lighting needs including those with visual impairment and other medical and age-related issues.
4. Casino gaming areas.
5. General area lighting power in industrial and manufacturing occupancies dedicated to the inspection or quality control of goods and products.
6. Mirror lighting in dressing rooms.
7. Task lighting for medical and dental purposes that is in addition to general lighting and controlled by an independent control device.
8. Display lighting for exhibits in galleries, museums and monuments that is in addition to general lighting and controlled by an independent control device.
9. Lighting for theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.

10. Lighting for photographic processes.
11. Lighting integral to equipment or instrumentation and installed by the manufacturer.
12. ((~~Task lighting~~)) Lighting for plant growth or maintenance where the lamp ((~~efficacy is not less than 90 lumens per watt~~)) has a tested photosynthetic photon efficacy (PPE) per watt of not less than 1.70 micromoles per joule for *greenhouses* and 1.90 micromoles per joule for indoor plant growth spaces.
13. Advertising signage or directional signage.
14. Lighting for food warming.
15. Lighting equipment that is for sale.
16. Lighting demonstration equipment in lighting education facilities.
17. Lighting *approved* because of safety considerations.
18. Lighting in retail display windows, provided the display area is enclosed by ceiling-height partitions.
19. Furniture mounted supplemental task lighting that is controlled by *automatic* shutoff.
20. Exit signs.
21. Lighting used for aircraft painting.
22. Germicidal lighting that is in addition to and controlled independently from the general lighting.

C405.4.2 Interior lighting power allowance. The total interior lighting power allowance (watts) is determined according to Table C405.4.2(1) using the Building Area Method, or Table C405.4.2(2) using the Space-by-Space Method, for all areas of the building covered in this permit.

C405.4.2.1 Building area method. For the Building Area Method, the interior lighting power allowance is the floor area for each building area type listed in Table C405.4.2(1) times the value from Table C405.4.2(1) for that area. For the purposes of this method, an "area" shall be defined as all contiguous spaces that accommodate or are associated with a single building area type as listed in Table C405.4.2(1). Where this method is used to calculate the total interior lighting power for an entire building, each building area type shall be treated as a separate area.

C405.4.2.2 Space-by-space method. For the Space-by-Space Method, the interior lighting power allowance is determined by multiplying the floor area of each space times the value for the space type in Table C405.4.2(2) that most closely represents the proposed use of the space, and then summing the lighting power allowances for all spaces. Tradeoffs among spaces other than covered parking areas are permitted.

Each area enclosed by partitions that are 80 percent of the ceiling height or taller shall be considered a separate space and assigned the appropriate space type from Table C405.4.2(2). If a space has multiple functions where more than one space type is applicable, that space shall be broken up into smaller subspaces, each using their own space type. Any of these subspaces that are smaller in floor area than 20 percent of the enclosed space and less than 1,000 square feet need not be broken out separately.

TABLE C405.4.2(1)
INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: BUILDING AREA METHOD

Building Area Type	((~~LPD (w/ft^2)~~))	LPD (w/ft^2)
Automotive facility	((~~0.64~~))	0.58
Convention center	((~~0.64~~))	0.58
Court house	((~~0.79~~))	0.71
Dining: Bar lounge/leisure	((~~0.79~~))	0.71
Dining: Cafeteria/fast food	((~~0.72~~))	0.65
Dining: Family	((~~0.71~~))	0.64
Dormitory[a,b]	((~~0.46~~))	0.41
Exercise center	((~~0.67~~))	0.60
Fire station[a]	((~~0.54~~))	0.49
Gymnasium	((~~0.75~~))	0.68
Health care clinic	((~~0.70~~))	0.63
Hospital[a]	((~~0.84~~))	0.84
Hotel[a,b]	((~~0.56~~))	0.50
Library	((~~0.83~~))	0.75
Manufacturing facility	((~~0.82~~))	0.74
Motion picture theater	((~~0.44~~))	0.40
Multifamily[c]	((~~0.41~~))	0.37
Museum	((~~0.55~~))	0.50
Office	((~~0.64~~))	0.58
Parking garage	((~~0.14~~))	0.13
Penitentiary	((~~0.65~~))	0.65
Performing arts theater	((~~0.84~~))	0.76
Police station	((~~0.66~~))	0.60
Post office	((~~0.65~~))	0.59
Religious building	((~~0.67~~))	0.60
Retail	((~~0.84~~))	0.76
School/university	((~~0.70~~))	0.63
Sports arena	((~~0.62~~))	0.54
Town hall	((~~0.69~~))	0.62
Transportation	((~~0.50~~))	0.45
Warehouse	((~~0.40~~))	0.36
Workshop	((~~0.91~~))	0.82

a. Where sleeping units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the wattage of lighting in the sleeping units is counted.
b. Where dwelling units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.
c. Dwelling units are excluded. Neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.

TABLE C405.4.2(2)
INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE-BY-SPACE TYPES[a]	((~~LPD (w/ft²)~~)	LPD (w/ft²)
Atrium – Less than 20 feet in height	((~~0.39~~))	0.35
Atrium – 20 to 40 feet in height	((~~0.48~~))	0.43
Atrium – Above 40 feet in height	((~~0.60~~))	0.54
Audience/seating area – Permanent		
In an auditorium	((~~0.61~~))	0.55
In a gymnasium	((~~0.23~~))	0.21
In an motion picture theater	((~~0.27~~))	0.24
In a penitentiary	((~~0.67~~))	0.67
In an performing arts theater	((~~1.16~~))	1.04
In a religious building	((~~0.72~~))	0.65
In a sports arena	((~~0.33~~))	0.30
Otherwise	((~~0.23~~))	0.21
Banking activity area	((~~0.61~~))	0.55
Breakroom (see Lounge/breakroom)		
Classroom/lecture hall/training room		
In a penitentiary	((~~0.89~~))	0.89
Otherwise[m]	((~~0.71~~))	0.64
Computer room, data center	((~~0.94~~))	0.85
Conference/meeting/multipurpose	((~~0.97~~))	0.87
Confinement cell	((~~0.70~~))	0.63
Copy/print room	((~~0.31~~))	0.28
Corridor		
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	((~~0.71~~))	0.71
In a hospital	((~~0.71~~))	0.71
In a manufacturing facility	((~~0.41~~))	0.37
Otherwise[c,q]	((~~0.41~~))	0.37
Courtroom[c]	((~~1.20~~))	1.08
Dining area		
In a penitentiary	((~~0.42~~))	0.42
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	((~~1.27~~))	1.27
In a bar/lounge or leisure dining[n]	((~~0.86~~))	0.77
In cafeteria or fast food dining	((~~0.40~~))	0.36
In a family dining area[n]	((~~0.60~~))	0.54
Otherwise	((~~0.43~~))	0.39
Electrical/mechanical	((~~0.43~~))	0.39
Emergency vehicle garage	((~~0.52~~))	0.47
Food preparation	((~~1.09~~))	0.98
Guest room[a,b]	((~~0.41~~))	0.37
Laboratory		
In or as a classrooms	((~~1.11~~))	1.00
Otherwise	((~~1.33~~))	1.20
Laundry/washing area	((~~0.53~~))	0.48
Loading dock, interior	((~~0.88~~))	0.79

TABLE C405.4.2(2)
INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

COMMON SPACE-BY-SPACE TYPES[a]	((~~LPD (w/ft²)~~)	LPD (w/ft²)
Lobby[c]		
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	((~~1.69~~))	1.69
For an elevator	((~~0.65~~))	0.59
In a hotel	((~~0.51~~))	0.46
In a motion picture theater	((~~0.23~~))	0.21
In a performing arts theater	((~~1.25~~))	1.13
Otherwise	((~~0.84~~))	0.76
Locker room	((~~0.52~~))	0.47
Lounge/breakroom[n]		
In a health care facility	((~~0.42~~))	0.42
Otherwise	((~~0.59~~))	0.53
Office		
Enclosed ≤ 250	((~~0.74~~))	0.67
Enclosed > 250	((~~0.66~~))	0.59
Open plan	((~~0.61~~))	0.55
Parking area, interior	((~~0.15~~))	0.14
Pharmacy area	((~~1.66~~))	1.66
Restroom		
In a facility for the visually impaired (and not used primarily by the staff)[b]	((~~1.26~~))	1.26
Otherwise[n]	((~~0.63~~))	0.57
Sales area	((~~1.05~~))	0.95
Seating area, general	((~~0.23~~))	0.21
((~~Stairway (See space containing stairway)~~))		
Stairwell[n]	((~~0.49~~))	0.44
Storage room		
< 50 ft²	((~~0.51~~))	0.46
50-100 ft²	((~~0.38~~))	0.34
All other storage	((~~0.38~~))	0.34
Vehicular maintenance	((~~0.60~~))	0.54
Workshop	((~~1.26~~))	1.13

TABLE C405.4.2(2) (continued)
INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

BUILDING SPECIFIC SPACE-BY-SPACE TYPES[a]	((~~LPD (w/ft²)~~))	LPD (w/ft²)
Automotive (see Vehicular maintenance)	((~~0.60~~))	
Convention center – Exhibit space	((~~0.61~~))	0.55
Dormitory living quarters[a,b]	((~~0.50~~))	0.45
Facility for the visually impaired[b]		
In a chapel (and not used primarily by the staff)	((~~0.70~~))	0.70
In a recreation room (and not used primarily by the staff)	((~~1.77~~))	1.77
Fire stations[g]		
Sleeping quarters	((~~0.23~~))	0.21
Gymnasium/fitness center		
In an exercise area	((~~0.90~~))	0.83
In a playing area	((~~0.85~~))	0.77

TABLE C405.4.2(2) (continued)
INTERIOR LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES: SPACE-BY-SPACE METHOD

BUILDING SPECIFIC SPACE-BY-SPACE TYPES[a]	((~~LPD (w/ft²)~~))	LPD (w/ft²)
Health care facility		
In an exam/treatment room	((~~1.40~~))	1.40
In an imaging room	((~~0.94~~))	0.94
In a medical supply room	((~~0.62~~))	0.62
In a nursery	((~~0.92~~))	0.92
In a nurse's station	((~~1.17~~))	1.17
In an operating room	((~~2.26~~))	2.26
In a patient room[g]	((~~0.68~~))	0.68
In a physical therapy room	((~~0.91~~))	0.91
In a recovery room	((~~1.25~~))	1.25
Library[f]		
In a reading area[n]	((~~0.31~~))	0.86
In the stacks	((~~1.10~~))	0.99
Manufacturing facility		
In a detailed manufacturing area	((~~0.80~~))	0.72
In an equipment room	((~~0.76~~))	0.68
In an extra high bay area (> 50-foot floor-ceiling height)	((~~1.42~~))	1.28
In a high bay area (25 – 50-foot floor-ceiling height)	((~~1.24~~))	1.12
In a low bay area (< 25-foot floor-ceiling height)	((~~0.86~~))	0.77
Museum		
In a general exhibition area	((~~0.31~~))	0.28
In a restoration room	((~~1.10~~))	0.99
Performing arts theater dressing/fitting room	((~~0.41~~))	0.37
Post office—Sorting area	((~~0.71~~))	0.69
Religious building		
In a fellowship hall[n]	((~~0.54~~))	0.49
In a worship pulpit/choir area[n]	((~~0.85~~))	0.77
Retail		
In a dressing/fitting room	((~~0.51~~))	0.46
In a mall concourse	((~~0.82~~))	0.74
Sports arena—Playing area		
For a Class 1 facility[i]	((~~2.94~~))	2.94
For a Class 2 facility[j]	((~~2.01~~))	2.01
For a Class 3 facility[k]	((~~1.30~~))	1.30
For a Class 4 facility[l]	((~~0.86~~))	0.86
Transportation		
In a baggage/carousel area	((~~0.39~~))	0.35
In an airport concourse	((~~0.25~~))	0.23
At a terminal ticket counter[n]	((~~0.51~~))	0.46
Warehouse—Storage area		
For medium to bulky palletized items	((~~0.33~~))	0.30
For smaller, hand-carried items	((~~0.69~~))	0.62

Keys to Table C405.4.2(2)

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 watt per square foot = 11 W/m^2.

Footnotes to Table C405.4.2(2)

a. In cases where both a common space type and a building area specific space type are listed, the building area specific space type shall apply.

b. A facility for the visually impaired is a facility that is licensed or will be licensed by local or state authorities for senior long-term care, adult daycare, senior support or people with special visual needs.

c. For spaces in which lighting is specified to be installed in addition to, and controlled separately from, the general lighting for the purposed of highlighting art or exhibits, provided that the additional lighting power shall not exceed 0.5 W/ft^2 of such spaces.
d. RESERVED.
e. RESERVED.
f. RESERVED.
g. Where sleeping units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the sleeping units nor the wattage of lighting in the sleeping units is counted.
h. Where dwelling units are excluded from lighting power calculations by application of Section R404.1, neither the area of the dwelling units nor the wattage of lighting in the dwelling units is counted.
i. Class I facilities consist of professional facilities; and semi-professional, collegiate or club facilities with seating for 5,000 or more spectators.
j. Class II facilities consist of collegiate and semi-professional facilities with seating for fewer than 5,000 spectators; club facilities with seating between 2,000 and 5,000 spectators; and amateur league and high school facilities with seating for more than 2,000 spectators.
k. Class III facilities consist of club, amateur league and high school facilities with seating for 2,000 or fewer spectators.
l. Class IV facilities consist of elementary school and recreational facilities; and amateur league and high school facilities without provisions for spectators.
m. For classrooms, additional lighting power allowance of 4.50 W/lineal foot of white or chalk boards for directional lighting dedicated to white or chalk boards.
n. Additional lighting power allowance of 0.30 W/square foot for ornamental lighting. Qualifying ornamental lighting includes luminaires such as chandeliers, sconces, lanterns, neon and cold cathode, light emitting diodes, theatrical projectors, moving lights and light color panels when any of those lights are used in a decorative manner that does not serve as display lighting or general lighting.
o. For scientific laboratories, additional lighting power allowance of 0.35 Watts per square foot for specialized task work – lighting that provides for small-scale, cognitive or fast performance visual tasks; lighting required for operating specialized equipment associated with pharmaceutical/laboratorial activities.
p. For offices, additional lighting power allowance of 0.20 W/square foot for portable lighting, which includes under shelf or furniture-mounted supplemental task lighting qualifies when controlled by a time clock or an occupancy sensor.
q. For corridors, additional lighting power allowance of 0.25 W/square foot for display lighting and decorative lighting where provided for aesthetic purposes. Decorative lighting fixtures in corridors are also permitted to provide general lighting. This additional allowance is not permitted to be used together with the allowance in footnote c for highlighting art or exhibits.

C405.4.2.2.1 Additional interior lighting power. Where using the Space-by-Space Method, an increase in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted for specific lighting functions. Additional power shall be permitted only where the specified lighting is installed and automatically controlled separately from the general lighting, to be turned off during nonbusiness hours. This additional power shall be used only for the specified luminaires and shall not be used for any other purpose. An increase in the interior lighting power allowance is permitted for lighting equipment to be installed in sales areas specifically to highlight merchandise. The additional lighting power shall be determined in accordance with Equation 4-11:

$$\text{Additional interior lighting power allowance} = 500 \text{ watts} + (\text{Retail Area 1} \times 0.45 \text{ W/ft}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 2} \times 0.45 \text{ W/ft}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 3} \times 1.05 \text{ W/ft}^2) + (\text{Retail Area 4} \times 1.87 \text{ W/ft}^2) \quad \textbf{(Equation 4-11)}$$

Where:

Retail Area 1 = The floor area for all products not listed in Retail Area 2, 3 or 4.

Retail Area 2 = The floor area used for the sale of vehicles, sporting goods and small electronics.

Retail Area 3 = The floor area used for the sale of furniture, clothing, cosmetics and artwork.

Retail Area 4 = The floor area used for the sale of jewelry, crystal and china.

Exception: Other merchandise categories are permitted to be included in Retail Areas 2 through 4, provided that justification documenting the need for additional lighting power based on visual inspection, contrast, or other critical display requirement is approved by the code official.

C405.5 Exterior lighting power requirements. The total connected exterior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.5.2 shall not be greater than the exterior lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.5.3.

C405.5.1 Exterior building grounds lighting. All exterior building grounds luminaires that operate at greater than 50 watts shall have a minimum efficacy of 100 lumens per watt unless the luminaire is controlled by a motion sensor or qualifies for one of the exceptions under Section C405.5.2.

Exceptions:

1. Solar-powered lamps not connected to any electrical service.
2. Luminaires controlled by a motion sensor.
3. Luminaires that qualify for one of the exceptions under Section C405.5.2.

C405.5.2 Total connected exterior building lighting power. The total exterior connected lighting power shall be the total maximum rated wattage of all exterior lighting that is powered through the energy service for the building.

Exception: Lighting used for the following applications shall not be included:

1. Lighting *approved* because of safety considerations.

2. Emergency lighting automatically off during normal business operation.
3. Exit signs.
4. Specialized signal, directional and marker lighting associated with transportation.
5. Advertising signage or directional signage.
6. Integral to equipment or instrumentation and is installed by its manufacturer.
7. Theatrical purposes, including performance, stage, film production and video production.
8. Athletic playing areas.
9. Temporary lighting.
10. Industrial production, material handling, transportation sites and associated storage areas.
11. Theme elements in theme/amusement parks.
12. Lighting integrated within or used to highlight features of art, public monuments and the national flag.
13. Lighting for water features and swimming pools.
14. Lighting that is controlled from within *dwelling units*, where the lighting complies with Section R404.1.

C405.5.3 Exterior lighting power allowance. The total exterior lighting power allowance is the sum of the base site allowance plus the individual allowances for areas that are to be illuminated by lighting that is powered through the energy service for the building. Covered parking garage lighting is not considered exterior lighting for the purposes of this calculation. Lighting power allowances are as specified in Table C405.5.3(2). The lighting zone for the building exterior is determined in accordance with Table C405.5.3(1) unless otherwise specified by the *code official*.

TABLE C405.5.3(1)
EXTERIOR LIGHTING ZONES

LIGHTING ZONE	DESCRIPTION
1	Developed areas of national parks, state parks, forest land, and rural areas
2	Areas predominantly consisting of residential zoning, neighborhood business districts, light industrial with limited nighttime use and residential mixed use areas
3	All other areas not classified as lighting zone 1, 2 or 4
((4)) Not used	((~~High-activity commercial districts in major metropolitan areas as designated by the local land use planning authority~~))

TABLE C405.5.3(2)
LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES FOR BUILDING EXTERIORS

	LIGHTING ZONES			
	Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3	Zone 4
Base Site Allowance	350 W	400 W	500 W	900 W
Uncovered Parking Areas				
Parking areas and drives	0.03 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2	0.06 W/ft^2	0.08 W/ft^2
Building Grounds				
Walkways and ramps less than 10 feet wide	0.5 W/linear foot	0.5 W/linear foot	0.6 W/linear foot	0.7 W/linear foot
Walkways and ramps 10 feet wide or greater, plaza areas special feature areas	0.10 W/ft^2	0.10 W/ft^2	0.11 W/ft^2	0.14 W/ft^2
Dining areas	0.65 W/ft^2	0.65 W/ft^2	0.75 W/ft^2	0.95 W/ft^2
Stairways	0.6 W/ft^2	0.7 W/ft^2	0.7 W/ft^2	0.7 W/ft^2
Pedestrian tunnels	0.12 W/ft^2	0.12 W/ft^2	0.14 W/ft^2	0.21 W/ft^2
Landscaping	0.03 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2	0.04 W/ft^2
Building Entrances and Exits				
Pedestrian and vehicular entrances and exists	14 W/linear foot of opening	14 W/linear foot of opening	21 W/linear foot of opening	21 W/linear foot of opening
Entry canopies	0.2 W/ft^2	0.25 W/ft^2	0.4 W/ft^2	0.4 W/ft^2
Loading docks	0.35 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2	0.35 W/ft^2
Sales Canopies				
Free-standing and attached	0.4 W/ft^2	0.4 W/ft^2	0.6 W/ft^2	0.7 W/ft^2
Outdoor Sales				
Open areas (including vehicle sales lots)	0.2 W/ ft^2	0.2 W/ ft^2	0.35 W/ ft^2	0.5 W/ ft^2
Street frontage for vehicle sales lots in addition to "open area" allowance	No allowance	7 W/linear foot	7 W/linear foot	21 W/linear foot

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 watt per square foot = W/0.0929 m^2.

TABLE C405.5.3(3)
INDIVIDUAL LIGHTING POWER ALLOWANCES FOR BUILDING EXTERIORS

	LIGHTING ZONES			
	Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3	Zone 4
Building facades	No Allowance	0.075 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area	0.113 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area	0.150 W/ft^2 of gross above-grade wall area
Automated teller machines (ATM) and night depositories	135 W per location plus 45 W per additional ATM per location			
Uncovered entrances and gatehouse inspection stations at guarded facilities	0.5 W/ft^2			
Uncovered loading areas for law enforcement, fire, ambulance and other emergency service vehicles	0.35 W/ft^2			
Drive-up windows/doors	200 W per drive-through			
Parking near 24-hour retail entrances	400 W per main entry			

C405.5.3.1 Additional exterior lighting power. Any increase in the exterior lighting power allowance is limited to the specific lighting applications indicated in Table C405.5.3(3). The additional power shall be used only for the luminaires that are serving these applications and shall not be used for any other purpose.

C405.5.4 Gas lighting. Gas-fired lighting appliances shall not be equipped with continuously burning pilot ignition systems.

C405.5.5 Full cutoff luminaires. For open parking and outdoor areas and roadways, luminaires mounted more than 15 feet above the ground shall have a luminaire light distribution in which zero candela intensity occurs at an angle of 90 degrees above nadir, and all greater angles from nadir.

C405.6 Electrical transformers. Low-voltage dry-type distribution electric transformers shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Table C405.6 as tested and rated in accordance with the test procedure listed in DOE 10 CFR 431. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where no certification program exists, the equipment efficiency ratings shall be supported by data furnished by the transformer manufacturer.

Exception: The following transformers are exempt:

1. Transformers that meet the Energy Policy Act of 2005 exclusions based on the DOE 10 CFR 431 definition of special purpose applications.
2. Transformers that meet the Energy Policy Act of 2005 exclusions that are not to be used in general purpose applications based on information provided in DOE 10 CFR 431.
3. Transformers that meet the Energy Policy Act of 2005 exclusions with multiple voltage taps where the highest tap is not less than 20 percent more than the lowest tap.
4. Drive transformers.
5. Rectifier transformers.
6. Auto-transformers.
7. Uninterruptible power system transformers.
8. Impedance transformers.
9. Regulating transformers.
10. Sealed and nonventilating transformers.
11. Machine tool transformer.
12. Welding transformer.
13. Grounding transformer.
14. Testing transformer.

TABLE C405.6
MINIMUM NOMINAL EFFICIENCY LEVELS FOR 10 CFR 431
LOW VOLTAGE DRY-TYPE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

Single Phase Transformers		Three Phase Transformers	
kVA[a]	Efficiency (%)[b]	kVA[a]	Efficiency (%)[b]
15	97.70	15	97.89
25	98.00	30	98.23
37.5	98.20	45	98.40
50	98.30	75	98.60
75	98.50	112.5	98.74
100	98.60	150	98.83
167	98.70	225	98.94
250	98.80	300	99.02
333	98.90	500	99.14
		750	99.23
		1000	99.28

a. kiloVolt-Amp rating.

b. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with the DOE 10 CFR 431 test procedure for low voltage dry-type transformers.

C405.7 Dwelling unit electrical energy consumption. Each dwelling unit located in a Group R-2 building shall have a separate electrical meter. A utility tenant meter meets this requirement. See Section C409 for additional requirements for energy metering and energy consumption management.

Exception: Dwelling units in other than Group R-2 apartment and live/work units are not required to provide a separate electrical metering at each dwelling unit where electrical usage is metered separately for each of the following building end uses:

1. Dwelling units.
2. Sleeping units.
3. Commercial kitchens.
4. Central laundries.

C405.7.1 Electric receptacles at dwelling unit gas appliances. Where *dwelling unit* appliances are served by natural gas, an electrical receptacle and circuit shall be provided at each gas appliance with sufficient capacity to serve a future electric appliance in the same location. The receptacles and circuits shall be included in the electrical service load calculation and shall meet the requirements of items 1 through 3 below. The receptacle for each gas appliance shall be located within 12 inches of the appliance and without obstructions between the appliance and the outlet. An electric receptacle is not required for a decorative gas fireplace.

1. Each gas range, cooktop, or oven, or combination appliance, location shall be served by a dedicated 240/208-volt, 40-amp receptacle connected to the *dwelling unit* electric panel with a 3-conductor branch circuit complying with 210.19(A)(3) of the Seattle electrical code and a minimum included load of 9600 VA for 240-volt systems or 8000 VA for 208-volt systems.
2. Each gas clothes dryer location shall be served by a dedicated 240/208-volt, 30-amp receptacle connected to the *dwelling unit* electric panel with a 3-conductor branch circuit and a minimum included load of 5000 VA.
3. Each gas domestic water heater location shall be served by a dedicated 240/208 volt, 30-amp outlet connected to the *dwelling unit* electrical panel with a 3-conductor branch circuit and a minimum included load of 4500 VA.

C405.8 Electric motor efficiency. All electric motors, fractional or otherwise, shall meet the minimum efficiency requirements of Tables C405.8(1) through C405.8(4) when tested and rated in accordance with DOE 10 CFR. The efficiency shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program, or, where no certification program exists, the equipment efficiency rating shall be supported by data furnished by the motor manufacturer.

Exception: The standards in this section shall not apply to the following exempt electric motors.

1. Air-over electric motors.
2. Component sets of an electric motor.
3. Liquid-cooled electric motors.
4. Submersible electric motors.
5. Inverter-only electric motors.

Fractional hp fan motors that are 1/12 hp or greater and less than 1 hp (based on output power) which are not covered by Tables C405.8(3) and C405.8(4) shall be electronically commutated motors or shall have a minimum motor efficiency of 70 percent when rated in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431. These motors shall also have the means to adjust motor speed for either balancing or remote control. Belt-driven fans may use sheave adjustment for airflow balancing in lieu of a varying motor speed.

Exceptions:

1. Motors that are an integral part of specialized process equipment.
2. Where the motor is integral to a listed piece of equipment for which no complying motor has been approved.
3. Motors used as a component of the equipment meeting the minimum efficiency requirements of Section C403.3.2 and Tables C403.3.2(1) through ((~~C403.3.2(12)~~)) C403.3.2(13), provided that the motor input is included when determining the equipment efficiency.
4. Motors in the airstream within fan coils and terminal units that operate only when providing heating to the space served.
5. Fan motors that are not covered by Tables C405.8(1) through C405.8(4) and are used to power heat recovery ventilators, energy recovery ventilators, or local exhaust fans in Group R subject to the efficacy requirements of Section C403.8.4.
6. Domestic clothes dryer booster fans, range hood exhaust fans, and domestic range booster fans that operate intermittently.
7. Radon and contaminated soil exhaust fans.
8. Group R heat recovery ventilator and energy recovery ventilator fans that are less than 400 cfm.

TABLE C405.8(1)
MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR NEMA DESIGN A, NEMA DESIGN B AND IEC DESIGN N MOTORS (EXCLUDING FIRE PUMP) ELECTRIC MOTORS AT 60 HZ[a,b]

Motor horsepower (Standard kilowatt equivalent)	Nominal full-load efficiency (%) as of June 1, 2016							
	2 pole		4 pole		6 pole		8 pole	
	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open
1 (0.75)	77.0	77.0	85.5	85.5	82.5	82.5	75.5	75.5
1.5 (1.1)	84.0	84.0	86.5	86.5	87.5	86.5	78.5	77.5
2 (1.5)	85.5	85.5	86.5	86.5	88.5	87.5	84.0	86.5
3 (2.2)	86.5	85.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	88.5	85.5	87.5
5 (3.7)	88.5	86.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	86.5	88.5
7.5 (5.5)	89.5	88.5	91.7	91.0	91.0	90.2	86.5	89.5
10 (7.5)	90.2	89.5	91.7	91.7	91.0	91.7	89.5	90.2
15 (11)	91.0	90.2	92.4	93.0	91.7	91.7	89.5	90.2
20 (15)	91.0	91.0	93.0	93.0	91.7	92.4	90.2	91.0
25 (18.5)	91.7	91.7	93.6	93.6	93.0	93.0	90.2	91.0
30 (22)	91.7	91.7	93.6	94.1	93.0	93.6	91.7	91.7
40 (30)	92.4	92.4	94.1	94.1	94.1	94.1	91.7	91.7
50 (37)	93.0	93.0	94.5	94.5	94.1	94.1	92.4	92.4
60 (45)	93.6	93.6	95.0	95.0	94.5	94.5	92.4	93.0
75 (55)	93.6	93.6	95.4	95.0	94.5	94.5	93.6	94.1
100 (75)	94.1	93.6	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	93.6	94.1
125 (90)	95.0	94.1	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	94.1	94.1
150 (110)	95.0	94.1	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.1	94.1
200 (150)	95.4	95.0	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.5	94.1
250 (186)	95.8	95.0	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.0	95.0
300 (224)	95.8	95.4	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8		
350 (261)	95.8	95.4	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.8		
400 (298)	95.8	95.8	96.2	95.8				
450 (336)	95.8	96.2	96.2	96.2				
500 (373)	95.8	96.2	96.2	96.2				

a. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

b. For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or kilowatt rating, determined as follows:

1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula 1 kW = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with 1 or 2, whichever applies.

TABLE C405.8(2)
MINIMUM NOMINAL FULL-LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR NEMA DESIGN C AND IEC DESIGN H MOTORS AT 60HZa,b

Motor horsepower (Standard kilowatt equivalent)	Nominal full-load efficiency (%) as of June 1, 2016					
	4 pole		6 pole		8 pole	
	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open	Enclosed	Open
1 (0.75)	85.5	85.5	82.5	82.5	75.5	75.5
1.5 (1.1)	86.5	86.5	87.5	86.5	78.5	77.5
2 (1.5)	86.5	86.5	88.5	87.5	84.0	86.5
3 (2.2)	89.5	89.5	89.5	88.5	85.5	87.5
5 (3.7)	89.5	89.5	89.5	89.5	86.5	88.5
7.5 (5.5)	91.7	91.0	91.0	90.2	86.5	89.5
10 (7.5)	91.7	91.7	91.0	91.7	89.5	90.2
15 (11)	92.4	93.0	91.7	91.7	89.5	90.2
20 (15)	93.0	93.0	91.7	92.4	90.2	91.0
25 (18.5)	93.6	93.6	93.0	93.0	90.2	91.0
30 (22)	93.6	94.1	93.0	93.6	91.7	91.7
40 (30)	94.1	94.1	94.1	94.1	91.7	91.7
50 (37)	94.5	94.5	94.1	94.1	92.4	92.4
60 (45)	95.0	95.0	94.5	94.5	92.4	93.0
75 (55)	95.4	95.0	94.5	94.5	93.6	94.1
100 (75)	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	93.6	94.1
125 (90)	95.4	95.4	95.0	95.0	94.1	94.1
150 (110)	95.8	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.1	94.1
200 (150)	96.2	95.8	95.8	95.4	94.5	94.1

NR - No requirement.

a. Nominal efficiencies shall be established in accordance with DOE 10 CFR 431.

b. For purposes of determining the required minimum nominal full-load efficiency of an electric motor that has a horsepower or kilowatt rating between two horsepower or two kilowatt ratings listed in this table, each such motor shall be deemed to have a listed horsepower or kilowatt rating, determined as follows:
   1. A horsepower at or above the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded up to the higher of the two horsepowers.
   2. A horsepower below the midpoint between the two consecutive horsepowers shall be rounded down to the lower of the two horsepowers.
   3. A kilowatt rating shall be directly converted from kilowatts to horsepower using the formula 1 kW = (1/0.746) horsepower. The conversion should be calculated to three significant decimal places, and the resulting horsepower shall be rounded in accordance with 1 or 2, whichever applies.

TABLE C405.8(3)
MINIMUM AVERAGE FULL LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR POLYPHASE SMALL ELECTRIC MOTORSa

	OPEN MOTORS		
NUMBER OF POLES ►	2	4	6
SYNCHRONOUS SPEED (RPM) ►	3600	1800	1200
MOTOR HORSEPOWER ▼			
0.25	65.6	69.5	67.5
0.33	69.5	73.4	71.4
0.50	73.4	78.2	75.3
0.75	76.8	81.1	81.7
1	77.0	83.5	82.5
1.5	84.0	86.5	83.8
2	85.5	86.5	N/A
3	85.5	86.9	N/A

a. Average full load efficiencies shall be established in accordance with 10 CFR 431.

TABLE C405.8(4)
MINIMUM AVERAGE FULL LOAD EFFICIENCY FOR CAPACITOR-START CAPACITOR-RUN AND CAPACITOR-START INDUCTION-RUN SMALL ELECTRIC MOTORS[a]

	OPEN MOTORS		
NUMBER OF POLES ►	2	4	6
SYNCHRONOUS SPEED (RPM) ►	3600	1800	1200
MOTOR HORSEPOWER ▼			
0.25	66.6	68.5	62.2
0.33	70.5	72.4	66.6
0.50	72.4	76.2	76.2
0.75	76.2	81.8	80.2
1	80.4	82.6	81.1
1.5	81.5	83.8	N/A
2	82.9	84.5	N/A
3	84.1	N/A	N/A

a. Average full load efficiencies shall be established in accordance with 10 CFR. 431.

C405.9 Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment. Vertical and horizontal transportation systems and equipment shall comply with this section.

C405.9.1 Elevator cabs. For the luminaires in each elevator cab, not including signals and displays, the sum of the lumens divided by the sum of the watts shall be not less than 35 lumens per watt. Ventilation fans in elevators that do not have their own air conditioning system shall not consume more than 0.33 watts/cfm at the maximum rated speed of the fan. Controls shall be provided that will de-energize ventilation fans and lighting systems when the elevator is stopped, unoccupied and with its doors closed for over 15 minutes.

C405.9.2 Escalators and moving walks. Escalators and moving walks shall comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and shall have *automatic* controls configured to reduce speed to the minimum permitted speed in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 or applicable local code when not conveying passengers.

Exception: A variable voltage drive system that reduces operating voltage in response to light loading conditions ((~~may~~)) is permitted to be provided in ((~~place~~)) lieu of the variable speed function.

C405.9.3 Regenerative drive. An escalators designed either for one-way down operation only or for reversible operation shall have a variable frequency regenerative drive that supplies electrical energy to the building electrical system when the escalator is loaded with passengers whose combined weight exceeds 750 pounds.

C405.10 Controlled receptacles. At least 50 percent of all 125 volt 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in private offices, open offices, conference rooms, rooms used primarily for printing and/or copying functions, break rooms, individual workstations and classrooms, including those installed in modular partitions and modular office workstation systems, shall be controlled as required by this section. ((~~In rooms larger than 200 square feet (19 m^2),~~)) Either split receptacles shall be provided, with the top receptacle(s) controlled, or a *controlled receptacle* shall be located within ((~~72~~)) 12 inches (((~~1.8~~)) 0.3 m) of each uncontrolled receptacle. *Controlled receptacles* shall be visibly differentiated from standard receptacles using the standard symbol required by the Seattle Electrical Code and shall be controlled by one of the following *automatic control devices:*

1. An occupant sensor that turns receptacle power off when no occupants have been detected for a maximum of 20 minutes.
2. A time-of-day operated control device that turns receptacle power off at specific programmed times and can be programmed separately for each day of the week. The control device shall be configured to provide an independent schedule for each portion of the building not to exceed 5,000 square feet (465 m^2) and not to exceed one full floor. The device shall be capable of being overridden for periods of up to two hours by a timer in a location with *access* to occupants. Any individual override switch shall control the *controlled receptacles* for a maximum area of 5,000 square feet (465 m^2). Override switches for *controlled receptacles* are permitted to control the lighting within the same area.

Exceptions:

1. Receptacles designated for specific equipment requiring 24-hour operation, for building maintenance functions, or for specific safety or security equipment are not required to be controlled by an *automatic control device* and are not required to be located within ((~~72~~)) 12 inches of a *controlled receptacle.*
2. Within a single modular office workstation, non-*controlled receptacles* are permitted to be located more than 12 inches, but not more than 72 inches, from the *controlled receptacles* serving that workstation.

SDCI Informative Note: The requirements of this section also apply to rooms and spaces that have substantially similar functions to those listed even when they are labeled with different names. For example, an area designed for office functions that is labeled "work room," or a room used as a classroom that is labeled "student learning" would each be required to provide *controlled receptacles.*

C405.11 Voltage drop in feeders and branch circuits. The total voltage drop across the combination of feeders and branch circuits shall not exceed five percent.

C405.12 Commissioning. Controlled receptacles and lighting systems shall be commissioned in accordance with Section C408.

SECTION C406
EFFICIENCY PACKAGES

C406.1 Additional energy efficiency credit requirements. New buildings and changes in space conditioning, change of occupancy and building additions in accordance with Chapter 5 shall comply with sufficient packages from Table C406.1 so as to achieve a minimum number of ((~~six~~)) 8 credits. Each area shall be permitted to apply for different packages provided all areas in the building comply with the requirement for ((~~six~~)) 8 credits. Areas included in the same permit within mixed use buildings shall be permitted to demonstrate compliance by an area weighted average number of credits by building occupancy achieving a minimum number of ((~~six~~)) 8 credits.

Exceptions:

1. Low energy spaces in accordance with Section C402.1.1.1 and equipment buildings in accordance with Section C402.1.2 shall comply with sufficient packages from Table C406.1 to achieve a minimum number of ((~~three~~)) 4 credits.
2. Building additions that have less than 1,000 square feet of *conditioned floor area* shall comply with sufficient packages from Table C406.1 to achieve a minimum number of ((~~three~~)) 4 credits.

C406.1.1 Tenant spaces. Initial tenant improvement shall comply with sufficient packages from Table C406.1 to achieve a minimum number of ((~~six~~)) 8 credits when the space is fully built out. In buildings with multiple tenant spaces, each tenant space is permitted to apply for different packages provided all areas in the building comply with the requirement for ((~~six~~)) 8 credits when the space is fully built-out. This provision only applies to the initial buildout of a tenant space.

SDCI Informative Note: In this section "tenant space" means any conditioned area within a new building that is constructed for first occupancy under a separate permit from the shell and core permits.

C406.1.1.1 Applicable envelope and on-site renewable energy credits. Where an entire building or building addition complies with Section C406.5, C406.10 or C406.11, under an initial tenant improvement permit, tenant spaces within the building qualify for the number of credits assigned to the occupancy type of the tenant space in accordance with Table C406.1.

TABLE C406.1
EFFICIENCY PACKAGE CREDITS

Code Section	Commercial Building Occupancy					
	Group R-1	Group R-2	Group B	Group E	Group M	All Other
	Additional Efficiency Credits					
1. More efficient HVAC performance in accordance with Section C406.2	2.0	3.0	3.0	2.0	1.0	2.0
2. Reduced lighting power: Option 1 in accordance with Section C406.3.1	1.0	1.0	2.0	2.0	3.0	2.0
3. Reduced lighting power: Option 2 in accordance with Section C406.3.2[a]	2.0	3.0	4.0	4.0	6.0	4.0
4. Enhanced lighting controls in accordance with Section C406.4	NA	NA	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
5. On-site supply of renewable energy in accordance with Section C406.5	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	3.0
5.1. One-third of renewable energy required by Section C406.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
5.2. Two-thirds of renewable energy required by Section C406.5	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0	2.0
6. Dedicated outdoor air system in accordance with Section C406.6[b]	4.0	((~~4.0~~)) 2.0[d]	4.0	NA	NA	4.0
7. High performance dedicated outdoor air system in accordance with Section C406.7	4.0	4.0	4.0	4.0	4.0	4.0
8. High-efficiency service water heating in accordance with Sections C406.8.1 and C406.8.2	4.0 NA after 1/1/2022	5.0 NA after 1/1/2022	NA	NA	NA	8.0
9. High performance service water heating in ((~~multi-family~~)) R-1 and R-2 buildings in accordance with Section C406.9	7.0 prior to 1/1/2022 5.0 after 1/1/2022	8.0 prior to 1/1/2022 5.0 after 1/1/2022	NA	NA	NA	NA
10. Enhanced envelope performance in accordance with Section C406.10[c]	3.0	6.0	3.0	3.0	3.0	4.0
11. Reduced air infiltration in accordance with Section C406.11[c]	1.0	2.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
((~~12. Enhanced commercial kitchen equipment in accordance with Section C406.12~~	~~5.0~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~NA~~	~~5.0~~	~~5.0 (Group A-2 only)~~))

a. Projects using this option may not use Item 2.

b. This option is not available to buildings subject to the prescriptive requirements of Section C403.3.5 or C403.6.

c. Buildings or building areas that are exempt from thermal envelope requirements in accordance with Sections C402.1.1 and C402.1.2 do not qualify for this package.

d. 4.0 credits, instead of 2.0 credits, are permitted to be applied to areas of R-2 occupancy buildings other than *dwelling units*, including corridors, lobbies and tenant amenity spaces, where those areas comply with the requirements for this credit.

C406.1.1.2 Applicable HVAC and service water heating credits. Where HVAC and service water heating systems and services are installed and comply with Section C406.2 or C406.8 under an initial tenant improvement permit, those systems and services shall be considered a part of the tenant space. Tenant spaces qualify for the credits assigned to the occupancy type of the tenant space in accordance with Table C406.1 if the tenant space includes the distribution system and equipment that the central HVAC systems or service water heating systems were designed to support.

Exception: Previously occupied tenant spaces in existing buildings that comply with this code in accordance with Section C501.

C406.2 More efficient HVAC equipment and fan performance. No less than 90 percent of the total HVAC capacity serving the total *conditioned floor area* of the entire building, building *addition*, building area, occupancy type, or tenant space in accordance with Section C406.1.1, shall comply with Sections C406.2.1 through C406.2.3. ((~~For~~)) In addition, systems required to comply with Section C403.1.1, HVAC total system performance ratio, shall exceed the ((~~minimum requirement~~)) HVAC TSPR of the *standard reference design* by 10 percent. This credit shall not be utilized for low energy or semi-heated space conditioning categories.

((~~**Exception:** In low energy spaces complying with Section C402.1.1 and semi-heated spaces complying with Section C402.1.1.2, no less than 90 percent of the installed heating capacity is provided by electric infrared or gas-fired radiant heat~~

~~ing equipment for localized heating applications. Stand-alone supply, return and exhaust fans shall comply with Section C406.2.3.~~))

C406.2.1 HVAC system selection. Equipment installed shall be types that are listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through ((~~C403.3.2(12)~~)) C403.3.2(13) or a combination thereof. Electric resistance heating does not meet this requirement. No HVAC systems incorporating fossil fuel-fired equipment, or heat from district energy systems that are primarily heated by fossil fuel combustion, are permitted to utilize this credit.

((**~~Exception:~~** ~~Allowed equipment not listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through C403.3.2(12):~~

1. ~~Air-to-water heat pumps.~~
2. ~~Heat recovery chillers.~~))

C406.2.2 Minimum equipment efficiency. Equipment shall exceed the minimum efficiency requirements listed in Tables C403.3.2(1) through ((~~C403.3.2(12)~~)) C403.3.2(13) by 15 percent, in addition to the requirements of Section C403. Where multiple performance requirements are provided, the equipment shall exceed all requirements by 15 percent.

Exceptions:

1. Equipment that is larger than the maximum capacity range indicated in Tables C403.3.2(1) through ((~~C403.3.2(12)~~)) C403.3.2(13) shall utilize the values listed for the largest capacity equipment for the associated equipment type shown in the table.
2. Equipment complying with the exception to Section C406.2.1 is not required to comply with the minimum equipment efficiency requirement.
3. Compliance may be demonstrated by calculating a total weighted average percentage for all heating and cooling equipment combined. All equipment shall have efficiency that is no less than 5 percent better than the minimum required efficiency in Tables C403.3.2(1) through ((~~C403.3.2(12)~~)) C403.3.2(13), and the resulting weighted average percentage for all equipment performance requirements shall exceed 15 percent. Calculation shall include heating and cooling capacities for all equipment, percentage better or worse than minimum required efficiency per Tables C403.3.2(1) through ((~~C403.3.2(12)~~)) C403.3.2(13) for each performance requirement (SEER, EER/IEER, COP, HSPF, Et, Ec and AFUE), and the total weighted average efficiency percentage.

((~~4. Hot water boilers with input capacity greater than 2,500,000 Btu/h shall be considered to comply with this section with a minimum thermal efficiency of 95 percent Et per the test procedure in 10 CFR Part 431.~~))

C406.2.3 Minimum fan efficiency. Stand-alone supply, return and exhaust fans designed for operating with motors over 750 watts (1 hp) shall have a fan efficiency grade of not less than FEG 71 as defined in AMCA 205. The total efficiency of the fan at the design point of operation shall be within 10 percentage points of either the maximum total efficiency of the fan or the static efficiency of the fan.

C406.3 Reduced lighting power. Interior lighting within the whole building, building area, occupancy type, building *addition* or tenant space shall comply with Section C406.3.1 or C406.3.2. *Dwelling units* and sleeping units within the building shall comply with Section C406.3.3.

C406.3.1 Reduced lighting power option 1. The total connected interior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.4.1 shall be 90 percent or less of the lighting power values specified in Table C405.4.2(1) times the floor area for the building types, or by using 90 percent or less of the total interior lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.4.2.

C406.3.2 Reduced lighting power option 2. The total connected interior lighting power calculated in accordance with Section C405.4.1 shall be 80 percent or less of the lighting power values specified in Table C405.4.2(1) times the floor area for the building types, or by using 80 percent or less of the total interior lighting power allowance calculated in accordance with Section C405.4.2.

C406.3.3 Lamp fraction. No less than 95 percent of the permanently installed light fixtures in *dwelling units* and sleeping units shall be provided by high efficacy lamps with a minimum efficacy of 65 lumens per watt. Where the conditioned floor area of residential dwelling units or sleeping units is separated from other building occupancies or building areas for the purposes of the C406 area weighted credit calculation, these dwelling or sleeping unit areas receive the credit weighting for reduced lighting power Option 1, referencing Section C406.3.1, in Table C406.1.

C406.4 Enhanced digital lighting controls. ((~~No~~)) Not less than 90 percent of the total installed interior lighting power within the whole building, building *addition* or tenant space shall comply with Section C406.4.1. Open office areas subject to Section C405.2 (1) are not permitted to take credit for this option.

C406.4.1 Lighting controls function. Interior lighting shall be located, scheduled and operated in accordance with Section C405.2, and shall be configured with the following enhanced control functions:

1. Luminaires shall be configured for continuous dimming.
2. Each luminaire shall be individually addressed.

Exceptions to Item 2:

1. Multiple luminaires mounted on no more than 12 linear feet of a single lighting track and addressed as a single luminaire.
2. Multiple linear luminaires that are ganged together to create the appearance of a single longer fixture and addressed as a single luminaire, where the total length of the combined luminaires is not more than 12 feet.
3. No more than eight luminaires within a *daylight zone* are permitted to be controlled by a single *daylight responsive control.*
4. Luminaires shall be controlled by a digital control system configured with the following capabilities:
   - 4.1. Scheduling and illumination levels of individual luminaires and groups of luminaires are capable of being reconfigured through the system.
   - 4.2. Load shedding.
   - 4.3. In open and enclosed offices, the illumination level of overhead general illumination luminaires are configured to be individually adjusted by occupants.
   - 4.4. Occupancy sensors and daylight responsive controls are capable of being reconfigured through the system.
5. Construction documents shall include submittal of a Sequence of Operations, including a specification outlining each of the functions required by this section.
6. These control functions shall be commissioned in accordance with Sections C408.1 and C408.3.

C406.5 On-site renewable energy. ((~~A~~)) In addition to the renewable energy required by Section C412 and to renewable energy used to comply with any other requirement of this code, a whole building, building *addition*, building area, occupancy type, or tenant space shall be provided with on-site renewable energy systems with ((~~an annual production per square foot~~)) a rated peak renewable energy generating capacity of no less than ((~~the value specified in Table C406.5~~)) 0.25 watts (or 0.85 BTU/h) per square foot of *conditioned floor area* based on the total *conditioned floor area* of the whole building, building *addition* or tenant space. The on-site renewable ((~~used in~~)) provided to comply with this option shall be separate from on-site renewables ((~~used as part of Section C406.7~~)) provided to comply with C406.8 or used to qualify for any exception in this code.

~~((TABLE C406.5~~
~~ON-SITE RENEWABLE ENERGY SYSTEM RATING~~
~~(PER SQUARE FOOT)~~

~~Building Area Type~~	~~kBTU per year~~	~~kWh per year~~
~~Assembly~~	~~1.8~~	~~0.53~~
~~Dining~~	~~10.7~~	~~3.14~~
~~Hospital~~	~~3.6~~	~~1.06~~
~~Hotel/Motel~~	~~2.0~~	~~0.59~~
~~Multi-family residential~~	~~0.50~~	~~0.15~~
~~Office~~	~~0.82~~	~~0.24~~
~~Other~~	~~2.02~~	~~0.59~~
~~Retail~~	~~1.31~~	~~0.38~~
~~School/University~~	~~1.17~~	~~0.34~~
~~Supermarket~~	~~5.0~~	~~1.47~~
~~Warehouse~~	~~0.43~~	~~0.13~~))

C406.6 Dedicated outdoor air system (DOAS). No less than 90 percent of the total *conditioned floor area* of the whole building, building area, occupancy type, building *addition* or tenant space, excluding floor area of unoccupied spaces that do not require ventilation per the *International Mechanical Code*, shall be served by DOAS installed in accordance with Section C403.3.5. This option is not available to buildings subject to the prescriptive requirements of Section C403.3.5. No HVAC systems incorporating fossil fuel-fired equipment, or heat from district energy systems that are primarily heated by fossil fuel combustion, are permitted to utilize this credit.

C406.7 High performance dedicated outdoor air system (DOAS). A whole building, building area, occupancy type, building *addition* or tenant space which includes a DOAS complying with Section C406.6 shall also provide minimum sensible effectiveness of heat recovery of 80 percent and DOAS total combined fan power less than 0.5 W/cfm of outdoor air. For the purposes of this section, total combined fan power includes all supply, exhaust, recirculation and other fans utilized for the purpose of ventilation. No HVAC systems incorporating fossil fuel-fired equipment, or heat from district energy systems that are primarily heated by fossil fuel combustion, are permitted to utilize this credit.

C406.8 Reduced energy use in service water heating. Buildings with service hot water heating equipment that serves the whole building, building *addition* or tenant space shall comply with Sections C406.8.1 and C406.8.2. No service water heating systems incorporating fossil fuel–fired equipment, or heat from district energy systems that are primarily heated by fossil fuel combustion, are permitted to utilize this credit.

C406.8.1 Building type. Not less than 90 percent of the *conditioned floor area* of the whole building, building area, occupancy type, building *addition* or tenant space shall be of the following types:

1. Group R-1: Boarding houses, hotels or motels. (Not applicable after 1/1/2022)
2. Group I-2: Hospitals, psychiatric hospitals and nursing homes.
3. Group A-2: Restaurants and banquet halls or buildings containing food preparation areas.
4. Group F: Laundries.
5. Group R-2. (Not applicable after 1/1/2022)
6. Group A-3: Health clubs and spas.
7. Buildings with a service hot water load of 10 percent or more of total building energy loads, as shown with an energy analysis as described in Section C407 or as shown through alternate service hot water load calculations showing a minimum service water energy use of 15 k/Btu per square foot per year, as approved by the building official.

C406.8.2 Load fraction. Not less than 60 percent of the annual service hot water heating energy use, or not less than 100 percent of the annual service hot water heating energy use in buildings with water-cooled systems subject to the requirements of Section C403.9.2.1 or qualifying for one of its exceptions, shall be provided by one or more of the following:

1. Service hot water system delivering heating requirements using heat pump technology with a minimum COP of 3.0. For air-source equipment, the COP rating will be reported at the design leaving heat pump water temperature with an entering air temperature of 60°F (15.6°C) or lower. For water-source equipment, the COP rating will be reported at the design leaving load water temperature with an entering water temperature of 74°F (23.3°C) or lower.
2. Waste heat recovery from service hot water, heat recovery chillers, building equipment, process equipment, or other *approved* system. Qualifying heat recovery must be above and beyond heat recovery required by other sections of this code.
3. On site renewable energy water-heating systems, where those systems are in addition to the renewable energy required by Section C412 and any renewable energy used to comply with other requirements of this code.

C406.9 High performance service water heating in hotel and multifamily buildings. For a whole building, building area, occupancy type, building *addition*, or tenant space with not less than 90 percent of the *conditioned floor area* being Group R-1 or R-2 occupancy, not less than 90 percent of the annual building service hot water energy use shall be provided by a heat pump system ((~~with a minimum COP of 3.0.~~)) meeting the requirements of Section C404.2.3 plus the following:

1. The refrigerant used in the heat pump system shall have a global warming potential (GWP) no greater than 675.
2. No electric resistance heating capacity shall be provided.

Exceptions to item 2:

1. Electric resistance heating is permitted for circulating system *temperature maintenance* and heat tracing of service hot water supply and return piping.
2. On-demand electric resistance water heaters for hand washing facilities are permitted in public toilet rooms.

((~~This~~)) Prior to January 1, 2022, this efficiency package is allowed to be taken in addition to Section ((~~C406.8.2~~)) C406.8.

C406.10 Enhanced envelope performance. The Proposed Total UA of the thermal envelope of the whole building, building area, occupancy type, or building *addition* shall be 15 percent lower than the Allowable Total UA for an area of identical configuration and fenestration area in accordance with Section C402.1.5 and Equation 4-2. Where exception 3 for Section C412 is also being used, the Proposed Total UA shall be 30 percent lower than the Allowable Total UA as defined in Section C402.1.5.

C406.11 Reduced air ((~~infiltration~~)) leakage. Measured air infiltration of the total *conditioned floor area* of the whole building, fully isolated building *addition*, ((~~or tenant space~~)) building area, or occupancy type shall comply with Section C406.11.1.

C406.11.1 Air leakage testing and verification. Air ((~~infiltration~~)) leakage shall be verified by whole building pressurization testing conducted in accordance with ASTM E779 or ASTM E1827, or an equivalent method *approved* by the *code official*, by an independent third party. The measured air leakage rate of the *building envelope* shall not exceed 0.17 cfm/ft^2 under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. water (75 Pa), with the calculated surface area being the sum of the above and below grade building envelope. A report that includes the tested surface area, floor area, air by volume, stories above grade, and leakage rates shall be submitted to the code official and the building owner.

((~~**Exception:** Where the *conditioned floor area* of the building is not less than 250,000 ft^2 (25,000 m^2), air leakage testing shall be permitted to be conducted on representative above-grade sections of the building provided the *conditioned floor*~~

~~*area* of tested areas is no less than 25 percent of the *conditioned floor area* of the building and are tested in accordance with this section.~~))

~~((**C406.12 Enhanced commercial kitchen equipment.** For buildings and spaces designated as Group A-2, or facilities whose primary business type involves the use of a commercial kitchen with at least one gas or electric fryer, all fryers, dishwashers, steam cookers and ovens shall comply with all of the following:~~

~~1. Achieve the ENERGY STAR label in accordance with the specifications current as of January 1, 2018.~~

~~2. Be installed prior to the issuance of the certificate of occupancy.~~

~~3. Have the ENERGY STAR qualified model number listed on the construction documents submitted for permitting.~~))

SDCI Informative Note: Energy Star commercial kitchen equipment is required for all commercial kitchen projects by Section C403.15.

SECTION C407
TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE

C407.1 Scope. This section establishes criteria for compliance using total building performance. All systems and loads shall be included in determining the total building performance including, but not limited to: Heating systems, cooling systems, service water heating, fan systems, lighting power, receptacle loads and process loads.

Exception: Energy used to recharge or refuel vehicles that are used for on-road and off-site transportation purposes.

C407.2 Mandatory requirements. Compliance with ((~~this section~~)) Section C407 also requires compliance with those sections shown in Table C407.2.

The building permit application for projects utilizing this method shall include in one submittal all building and mechanical drawings and all information necessary to verify that the building envelope and mechanical design for the project corresponds with the annual energy analysis. If credit is proposed to be taken for lighting energy savings, then an electrical permit application shall also be submitted and approved prior to the issuance of the building permit. If credit is proposed to be taken for energy savings from other components, then the corresponding permit application (e.g., plumbing, boiler, etc.) shall also be submitted and approved prior to the building permit application. Otherwise, components of the project that would not be approved as part of a building permit application shall be modeled the same in both the proposed building and the *standard reference design* and shall comply with the requirements of this code.

C407.3 Performance-based compliance. Compliance with this section requires compliance with ASHRAE Standard 90.1 Appendix G, Performance Rating Method, in accordance with Standard 90.1 Section 4.2.1 with the following modifications: ((~~.~~))

1. The mandatory requirements of Section G1.2.1a of Standard 90.1 are not required to be met.
2. The reduction in annual carbon emissions of the proposed building design associated with on-site renewable energy shall not be more than 3 percent of the total carbon emissions of the baseline building design. This limitation only applies to on-site renewable energy provided in excess of the renewable energy required by Section C412.
   a. The equation PCI + [(PBP$_{nre}$ – PBP)/BBP] – 0.05 < PCIt in Section 4.2.1.1 shall be modified to read PCI + [(PBP$_{nre}$ – PBP)/BBP] – 0.03 < PCIt.
   b. The term PBP$_{nre}$ shall be defined as the proposed building performance without credit for reduced annual energy emissions from on-site renewable energy generation system capacity in excess of that installed to satisfy the requirements of Section C412.
3. References to energy cost in Section 4.2.1.1 and Appendix G shall be replaced by carbon emissions calculated by multiplying site energy consumption by the carbon emission factor from Table C407.3(1).
4. The building performance factors in Table C4.2.1.1 shall be replaced with those in Table C407.3(2).
5. Schedules and plug and process loads shall be modeled using the default values listed in Appendix B or in the ASHRAE 90.1 User's Manual and shall be assumed to be identical in the proposed design and baseline building design.

   Exception to item 5: Alternative schedules and plug and process loads shall be permitted where *approved* by the *code official.*
6. Documentation requirements in Section G1.3.2.d shall be replaced by a list showing compliance with the mandatory provisions of Table C407.2.
7. Documentation requirements in Section G1.3.2.e shall be replaced by a list of aspects of the proposed design that are less stringent than the prescriptive requirements of the Seattle Energy Code.
8. References to yet-to-be-designed future building components in the Proposed Building Performance column of Table G3.1 shall be modified to reference the corresponding sections of the Seattle Energy Code in lieu of the requirements of Standard 90.1, in the following sections of the table:

1. Design Model, subclause c.
6. Lighting, subclause c.
11. Service Water-Heating Systems, subclause c.
12. Receptacle and Other Loads, subclause b.

9. HVAC Systems, subclauses c and d of Table G3.1, shall meet the following requirements:

   a. For yet-to-be-designed systems in office, retail, library, education, and multifamily buildings and occupancies subject to the TSPR requirements of Section C403.1.1, the system type and efficiency parameters shall meet but not exceed those shown in Table D602.11 Standard Reference Design HVAC Systems.

   b. For all other buildings and occupancies, the system type shall be the same as the system modeled in the baseline design, and shall comply with but not exceed the requirements of Section C403 in lieu of Standard 90.1.

   c. For HVAC systems serving future tenant spaces, where the current building permit applies to only a portion of an HVAC system, and future components will receive HVAC services from systems included in the current building permit, those future components shall be modeled as the type required to complete the HVAC system portions under the current permit and shall meet but not exceed the requirements found in Section C403.

SDCI Informative Note: The permit applicant is encouraged to schedule a pre-application meeting to discuss the modeling approach for any yet-to-be designed areas that are not included in the C407 permit submissions. In general, future permit submissions should not contribute energy savings to the C407 submission beyond prescriptive code requirements, assuming use of the base building HVAC systems. Future systems must be modeled for the base building permit as being no better than the current prescriptive code, because plans often change and the City does not have a mechanism for ensuring that future tenant projects meet any beyond-code performance modeled in the original C407 submission.

TABLE C407.2
MANDATORY COMPLIANCE MEASURES FOR TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE METHOD AND TARGET PERFORMANCE PATH[a]

Section	Title	Comments
	Envelope	
C402.5	Air Leakage	
	Mechanical	
C403.1.2	Calculation of heating and cooling loads	
C403.1.3	*Data centers*	
C403.1.4	Use of electric resistance and fossil fuel-fired heating equipment	
C403.2	System design	
C403.3.1	Equipment and system sizing	
C403.3.2	HVAC equipment performance requirements	
C403.3.6	Ventilation for Group R occupancy	
C403.3.7	Hydronic system flow rate	
C403.4	HVAC system controls	
C403.4.1	Thermostatic controls	Except for C403.4.1.4
C403.4.2	Off-hour controls	Except for Group R
C403.4.7	Combustion heating equipment controls	
C403.4.8	Group R-1 hotel/motel guestrooms	See Section C403.7.4
C403.4.9	Group R-2 and R-3 dwelling units	
C403.4.10	Group R-2 sleeping units	
C403.4.11	Direct digital control systems,	
C403.4.12	Pressure independent control valves	
C403.5.5	Economizer fault detection and diagnostics (FDD)	
C403.7	Ventilation and exhaust systems	Except for C403.7.6
C403.8	Fan and fan controls	
C403.9.1	Heat rejection equipment (partial)	Only the prohibition on single-pass water cooling systems is mandatory
C403.9.1.1	Variable flow controls	For cooling tower fans ≥ 7.5 hp
C403.9.1.2	Limitation on centrifugal fan cooling towers	For open cooling towers
C403.10	Construction of HVAC elements	

TABLE C407.2—continued
MANDATORY COMPLIANCE MEASURES FOR TOTAL BUILDING PERFORMANCE METHOD
AND TARGET PERFORMANCE PATH[a]

Section	Title	Comments
C403.11	Mechanical systems located outside of the building thermal envelope	
C403.15	Commercial food service	
	Service Water Heating	
C404	Service Water Heating	
	Lighting and Electrical	
C405.1	General	
C405.2	Lighting controls	
C405.3	Exit signs	
C405.4	Interior lighting power	
C405.5	Exterior building lighting power	
C405.6	Electrical transformers	
C405.7	Dwelling unit energy consumption	
C405.8	Electric motor efficiency	
C405.9	Vertical and horizontal transportation	
C405.10	Controlled receptacles	
C405.11	Voltage drop in feeders	
	Other Requirements	
C407	Total Building Performance	
C408	System commissioning	
C409	Energy metering	
C410	Refrigeration requirements	
C411	Solar readiness	
C412	Renewable energy	All on-site renewable energy production is included in the proposed building performance, but not in the baseline building performance.

a. Compliance with any of these sections includes compliance with any exception to that section.

TABLE C407.3(1)
CARBON EMISSIONS FACTORS

Type	CO2e (lb/unit)	Unit
Electricity	0.70	kWh
Natural Gas	11.7	Therm
Oil	19.2	Gallon
Propane	10.5	Gallon
Other[a]	195.00	mmBtu
On-site renewable energy[b]	0.00	

a. District energy systems may use alternative emission factors supported by calculations approved by the *code official*.
b. The TSPR calculation does not separately account for the use of renewable energy.

TABLE C407.3(2)
BUILDING PERFORMANCE FACTORS (BPF) TO BE USED FOR COMPLIANCE WITH SECTION C407.3

Building Area Type	Building Performance Factor
Multifamily	((~~0.58~~)) 0.52
Healthcare/hospital	((~~0.54~~)) 0.49
Hotel/motel	((~~0.64~~)) 0.58
Office	((~~0.56~~)) 0.51
Restaurant	((~~0.70~~)) 0.63
Retail	((~~0.47~~)) 0.43
School	((~~0.36~~)) 0.32
Warehouse	((~~0.48~~)) 0.43
All Others	((~~0.54~~)) 0.49

C407.3.1 Limits on ((~~non-mandatory measures~~)) substandard building envelopes. The Proposed Total UA of the proposed building shall be no more than ((~~20~~)) 10 percent higher than the Allowed Total UA as defined in Section C402.1.5. Where either Section C402.4.1.1.1 or C402.4.1.1.2 is used to establish the maximum allowable fenestration area for compliance with this section, all of the requirements of the selected section shall be met.

SECTION C408
SYSTEM COMMISSIONING

C408.1 General. A building commissioning process led by a *certified commissioning professional* and functional testing requirements shall be completed for mechanical systems in Section C403; service water heating systems in Section C404; controlled receptacle and lighting control systems in Section C405; equipment, appliance and systems installed to comply with Section C406 or C407; ((~~senergy~~)) energy metering in Section C409; and refrigeration systems in Section C410.

Exception: Buildings, or portions thereof, which are exempt from Sections C408.2 through C408.7 may be excluded from the commissioning process.

1. Mechanical systems are exempt from the commissioning process where the installed total mechanical equipment capacity is less than 240.000 Btu/h cooling capacity and less than 300,000 Btu/h heating capacity.
2. Service water heating systems are exempt from the commissioning process in buildings where the largest service water heating system capacity is less than 200,000 Btu/h and where there are no pools or permanent spas.
3. Lighting control systems are exempt from the commissioning process in buildings where both the total installed lighting load is less than 20 kW and the lighting load controlled by occupancy sensors or *automatic* daylighting controls is less than 10 kW.
4. Refrigeration systems are exempt from the commissioning process if they are limited to self-contained units.

C408.1.1 Commissioning in construction documents. Construction documents shall clearly indicate provisions for commissioning process. The construction documents shall minimally include the following:

1. A narrative description of the activities that will be accomplished during the commissioning process. At a minimum, the commissioning process is required to include:
   1.1. Development and execution of the commissioning plan, including all subsections of Section C408.1.2;
   1.2. The *certified commissioning professional's* review of the building documentation and close out submittals in accordance with Section C103.6; and
   1.3. The commissioning report in accordance with Section C408.1.3.
2. Roles, responsibilities and required qualifications of the *certified commissioning professional.*
3. A listing of the specific equipment, appliances or systems to be tested.

C408.1.2 Commissioning plan. A *commissioning plan* shall be developed by the project's *certified commissioning professional* and shall outline the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process. The plan shall also include the following:

1. A narrative description of the activities that will be accomplished during each phase of commissioning, including the personnel intended to accomplish each of the activities, systems testing and balancing, functional performance testing, and verification of the building documentation requirements in Section C103.6.
2. Roles and responsibilities of the commissioning team, including the name and statement of qualifications of the *certified commissioning professional.*
3. A listing of the specific equipment, appliances or systems to be tested and a description of the tests to be performed.

C408.1.2.1 In-house commissioning disclosure and conflict management plan. Where the *certified commissioning professional's* contract or employment is other than directly with the building owner, an in-house commissioning disclosure and conflict management plan shall be a part of the commissioning process. A copy shall be included in the commissioning plan. This plan shall disclose the *certified commissioning professional's* contractual relationship with other team members and provide a conflict management plan demonstrating that the *certified commissioning professional* is free to identify any issues discovered and report directly to the owner.

C408.1.2.2 Functional performance testing. Functional performance testing shall be conducted for mechanical systems in Sections C403; service water heating systems in Section C404; controlled receptacles and lighting control systems in Section C405; equipment, appliances and systems installed to comply with Section C406 or C407; energy metering in Section C409; and refrigeration systems in Section C410. Written procedures which clearly describe the individual systematic test procedures, the expected system response or acceptance criteria for each procedure, the actual response or findings, and any pertinent discussion shall be followed. This testing shall include control systems which will be tested to document that control devices, components, equipment, and systems are calibrated and adjusted to operate in accordance with approved construction documents. Testing shall affirm the conditions required within Sections C408.2 through C408.7 under system testing.

C408.1.2.3 Functional performance testing - sampling. For projects with seven or fewer similar systems, each system shall be tested. For projects with more than seven systems, testing shall be done for each unique combination of controls type. Where multiples of each unique combination of control types exist, no fewer than 20 percent of each combination shall be tested unless the *code official* or design professional requires a higher percentage to be tested. Where 30 percent or more of the tested system fail, all remaining identical combinations shall be tested.

C408.1.2.4 Deficiencies. Deficiencies found during testing shall be resolved including corrections and retesting.

C408.1.3 Commissioning report. A commissioning report shall be completed and certified by the *certified commissioning professional* and delivered to the building owner or owner's authorized agent. The report shall be organized with mechanical, service water heating, controlled receptacle and lighting control systems, energy metering, and refrigeration findings in separate sections to allow independent review. The report shall record the activities and results of the commissioning process and be developed from the final commissioning plan with all of its attached appendices. The report shall include:

1. Results of functional performance tests.
2. Disposition of deficiencies found during testing, including details of corrective measures used or proposed.
3. Functional performance test procedures used during the commissioning process including measurable criteria for test acceptance, provided herein for repeatability.
4. Commissioning plan.
5. Testing, adjusting and balancing report.

Exception: Deferred tests which cannot be performed at the time of report preparation due to climatic conditions.

C408.1.4 Commissioning process completion requirements. Prior to the final mechanical, plumbing and electrical inspections or obtaining a certificate of occupancy, the *certified commissioning professional* shall provide evidence of *building commissioning* in accordance with the provisions of this section.

C408.1.4.1 Commissioning compliance. Buildings, or portions thereof, shall not be considered acceptable for a final inspection pursuant to Section C104.2.6 until the *code official* has received a letter of transmittal from the building owner or owner's representative acknowledging that the building owner or owner's authorized agent has received the Commissioning Report. Completion of Commissioning Compliance Checklist (Figure C408.1.4.1) is deemed to satisfy this requirement. Phased acceptance of Commissioning Compliance Checklist for portions of the work specific to the trade that is being inspected is permissible where accepted by the *code official* and where the *certified commissioning professional* remains responsible for completion of the commissioning process. If there are unresolved deficiencies when the final inspection is scheduled, the Commissioning Report shall be submitted and shall describe the unresolved deficiencies.

C408.1.4.3 Copy of report. The *code official* shall be permitted to require that a copy of the Commissioning Report be made available for review by the *code official.*

C408.2 Mechanical systems commissioning. Mechanical equipment and controls subject to Section C403 shall be included in the commissioning process required by Section C408.1. The commissioning process shall minimally include all energy code requirements for which the code states that equipment or controls shall "be capable of" or "configured to" perform specific functions.

Exception: Mechanical systems are exempt from the commissioning process where the installed total mechanical equipment capacity is less than 240,000 Btu/h cooling capacity and less than 300,000 Btu/h heating capacity.

C408.2.1 Reserved.

FIGURE C408.1.4.1
COMMISSIONING COMPLIANCE CHECKLIST

Project Information	**Project Name:** **Project Address:** **Certified Commissioning Professional:** **Type of ISO Certification and Number:**
Supporting Documents	❑ **Manuals, record documents and training have been completed or are scheduled** (Section C103.6) • Building operations and maintenance information (C103.6.2) have been submitted to the owner or scheduled date: _____ • Manuals (C103.6.2.1) have been submitted to the owner or scheduled date: _____ • Compliance documentation (C103.6.3) has been provided to the owner or scheduled date: _____ • System operation training (C103.6.4) has been provided to the owner or scheduled date: _____
Commissioning Plan	❑ **Commissioning Plan was used during construction** (Section C408.1.2)
Commissioning Report	❑ **Commissioning Report has been submitted** (Section C408.1.3)
Commissioned Systems	❑ **Mechanical Systems were included in the commissioning process** (Section C408.2) ❑ Testing, adjusting and balancing is complete (Section C408.2.2) ❑ There are unresolved deficiencies with the mechanical systems. These are described in the attached Commissioning Report submitted to the Owner. ❑ **Service Water Heating Systems were included in the commissioning process** (Section C408.3) ❑ There are unresolved deficiencies with the service water heating systems. These are described in the attached Commissioning Report submitted to the Owner. ❑ **Controlled receptacles and lighting control systems were included in the commissioning process** (Section C408.4) ❑ There are unresolved deficiencies with the electrical power and/or automatic lighting controls. These are described in the attached Commissioning Report submitted to the Owner. ❑ **Additional systems were included in the commissioning process** (Section C408.5) ❑ There are unresolved deficiencies with systems required by C406 or C407. These are described in the attached Commissioning Report submitted to the Owner. ❑ **Metering systems were included in the commissioning process** (Section C408.6) ❑ There are unresolved deficiencies with the metering system. These are described in the attached Commissioning Report submitted to the Owner. ❑ **Refrigeration systems were included in the commissioning process** (Section C408.7) ❑ There are unresolved deficiencies with systems required by Section C410. These are described in the attached Commissioning Report submitted to the Owner.
Certification	❑ I hereby certify that requirements for Section C408 System Commissioning have been completed in accordance with the Washington State Energy Code, including all items above. _____ Certified Commissioning Professional Date ❑ I hereby certify that requirements for Section C408 System Commissioning have been completed in accordance with the Washington State Energy Code, including all items above. _____ Building Owner or Owner's Representative Date

SDCI Informative Note: An electronic version of the Commissioning Compliance Checklist is available on the SDCI Seattle Energy Code web page.

C408.2.2 Systems adjusting and balancing. HVAC systems shall be balanced in accordance with generally accepted engineering standards. Air and water flow rates shall be measured and adjusted to deliver final flow rates within the tolerances provided in the project specifications. Test and balance activities shall include air system and hydronic system balancing.

C408.2.2.1 Air systems balancing. Each supply air outlet and *zone* terminal device shall be equipped with means for air balancing in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 6 of the *International Mechanical Code*. Discharge dampers used for air system balancing are prohibited on constant volume fans and variable volume fans with motors 10 hp (18.6 kW) and larger. Air systems shall be balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses then, for fans with system power of greater than 1 hp (0.74 kW), fan speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions.

Exception: Fans with fan motors of 1 hp (0.74 kW) or less.

C408.2.2.2 Hydronic systems balancing. Individual hydronic heating and cooling coils shall be equipped with means for balancing and measuring flow. Hydronic systems shall be proportionately balanced in a manner to first minimize throttling losses, then the pump impeller shall be trimmed or pump speed shall be adjusted to meet design flow conditions. Each

hydronic system shall have either the capability to measure pressure across the pump, or test ports at each side of each pump.

Exception: The following equipment is not required to be equipped with means for balancing or measuring flow:

1. Pumps with pump motors of 5 hp (3.7 kW) or less.
2. Where throttling results in no greater than five percent of the nameplate horsepower draw above that required if the impeller were trimmed.

C408.2.3 System testing. Functional performance testing shall demonstrate the components, systems, and system-to-system interfacing relationships are installed and operate in accordance with approved construction documents. Testing shall include the *sequence of operation*, and be conducted under full-load, part-load and the following conditions:

1. All modes as described in the *sequence of operation;*
2. Redundant or *automatic* back-up mode;
3. Performance of alarms; and
4. Mode of operation upon a loss of power and restoration of power.

** **C408.3 Service water heating systems commissioning.** Service water heating equipment and controls subject to Section C404 shall be included in the commissioning process required by Section C408.1. The commissioning process shall minimally include equipment and components installed to meet all energy code requirements for devices to "start," "automatically turn off," "automatically adjust," "limit operation," and "limit the temperature" and "be configured to."

** **C408.3.1 System testing.** Functional performance testing shall demonstrate that heaters, piping, distribution systems, and system-to-system interfacing relationships are installed and operate in accordance with approved construction documents. Testing shall include the *sequence of operation*, and be conducted under at least 50 percent water heating load, part-load and the following conditions:

1. Normal operation;
2. Redundant or *automatic* back-up mode;
3. Performance of alarms; and
4. Mode of operation upon a loss of power and restoration of power.

C408.4 Controlled receptacle and lighting control system commissioning. Controlled receptacles and lighting control systems subject to Section C405 shall be included in the commissioning process required by Section C408.1. The configuration and function of controlled receptacles and lighting control systems required by this code shall be tested and shall comply with Section C408.4.1.

Exception: Lighting control systems and controlled receptacles are exempt from the commissioning process in buildings where:

1. The total installed lighting load is less than 20 kW, and
2. The lighting load controlled by occupancy sensors or *automatic* daylighting controls is less than 10 kW.

C408.4.1 System testing. Functional performance testing shall demonstrate that occupant sensors, time switches, manual overrides, night sweep-off, *daylight responsive control,* and *controlled receptacles* are installed and operate in accordance with *approved* construction documents. Testing shall include the *sequence of operation* and be conducted under the following conditions:

1. Normal operation;
2. Redundant or *automatic* back-up mode;
3. Performance of alarms; and
4. Mode of operation upon a loss of power and restoration of power.

C408.5 Systems installed to meet Section C406 or C407. Equipment, components, controls or configuration settings for systems which are included in the project to comply with Section C406 or C407 shall be included in the commissioning process required by Section C408.1.

C408.5.1 System testing. Functional performance testing for these appliances, equipment, components, controls and/or configuration settings shall demonstrate operation, function and maintenance serviceability for each of the commissioned systems in accordance with the *approved* construction documents.

C408.6 Metering system commissioning. Energy metering systems required by Section C409 shall comply with Section C408.6 and be included in the commissioning process required by Section C408.1. The commissioning process shall include all energy metering equipment and controls required by Section C409.

C408.6.1 System testing. Functional performance testing shall demonstrate that energy source meters, end-use meters, *data acquisition systems,* and energy displays are installed and operate in accordance with *approved* construction documents. At a minimum, testing shall confirm that:

1. The metering system devices and components work properly under low and high load conditions.
2. The metered data is delivered in a format that is compatible with the data collection system.
3. The energy display is in a location with *access* to building operation and management personnel.
4. The energy display meets code requirements regarding views required in Section C409.4.3. The display shows energy data in identical units (e.g., kWh).

C408.7 Refrigeration system commissioning. All installed refrigeration systems subject to Section C410 shall be included in the commissioning process required by Section C408.1.

Exceptions:

1. Self-contained refrigeration systems are exempt from the commissioning process.
2. Total installed capacity for refrigeration is equal to or less than 240 kBtu/h.

C408.7.1 System Testing. Functional performance testing shall demonstrate that compressors, heat exchangers, piping, distribution systems, and system-to-system interfacing relationships are installed and operate in accordance with *approved* construction documents. Testing shall include the *sequence of operation* and be conducted under full-load at, part-load and the following conditions:

1. Normal mode;
2. Redundant or *automatic* back-up mode;
3. Performance of alarms; and
4. Mode of operation upon a loss of power and restoration of power.

SECTION C409
ENERGY METERING AND ENERGY CONSUMPTION MANAGEMENT

C409.1 General. All new buildings and additions shall have the capability of metering source energy for on-site renewable energy production in accordance with Section C409.2.4 and the end-use energy usage for electric vehicle charging in accordance with Section C409.3.4. New buildings and additions with a gross *conditioned floor area* over ((~~50,000~~)) 20,000 square feet shall comply with Section C409. Buildings shall be equipped to measure, monitor, record and display energy consumption data for each energy source and end use category per the provisions of this section, to enable effective energy management. For Group R-2 buildings, the floor area of *dwelling units* and sleeping units shall be excluded from the total *conditioned floor area* for the purposes of determining the 20,000 square foot threshold. *Alterations* and *additions* to existing buildings shall conform to Section C506.

Exceptions:

1. Tenant spaces smaller than ((~~50,000~~)) 20,000 ft^2 within buildings if the tenant space has its own utility service and utility meters.
2. Buildings in which there is no gross *conditioned floor area* over ((~~25,000~~)) 10,000 square feet, including building common area, that is served by its own utility services and meters.

C409.1.1 Alternate metering methods. Where approved by the building official, energy use metering systems may differ from those required by this section, provided that they are permanently installed and that the source energy measurement, end use category energy measurement, data storage and data display have similar accuracy to and are at least as effective in communicating actionable energy use information to the building management and users, as those required by this section.

C409.1.2 Conversion factor. Any threshold stated in kW or kVA shall include the equivalent BTU/h heating and cooling capacity of installed equipment at a conversion factor of 3,412 Btu per kW ((~~at 50 percent demand~~)) or 2,730 Btu per kVA.

SDCI Informative Note: Seattle's "Building Tune-ups" ordinance will continue to be phased in during the effective period of the 2018 Seattle Energy Code, requiring buildings with over 50,000 square feet of *conditioned floor area* to periodically assess and optimize the functioning of energy-consuming systems. The cost and complexity of these tune-ups can potentially be minimized by careful configuration of the metering system.

C409.1.3 Dwelling units. See Sections C404.9 and C405.7 for additional metering requirements for Group R-2 *dwelling units*.

C409.2 Energy source metering. Buildings shall have a meter at each energy source. For each energy supply source listed in Section C409.2.1 through C409.2.4, meters shall collect data for the whole building or for each separately metered portion of the building where not exempted by the exceptions to Section C409.1.

Exceptions:

1. Energy source metering is not required where end use metering for an energy source accounts for all usage of that energy type within a building, and the *data acquisition system* accurately totals the energy delivered to the building or separately metered portion of the building.
2. Solid fuels such as coal, firewood or wood pellets that are delivered via mobile transportation do not require metering.

C409.2.1 Electrical energy. This category shall include all electrical energy supplied to the building and its associated site, including site lighting, parking, recreational facilities, and other areas that serve the building and its occupants.

Exception: Where site lighting and other exterior non-building electrical loads are served by an electrical service and meter that are separate from the building service and meter, the metering data from those loads is permitted to be either combined with the building's electrical service load data or delivered to a separate *data acquisition system.*

C409.2.2 Gas and liquid fuel supply energy. This category shall include all natural gas, fuel oil, propane and other gas or liquid fuel energy supplied to the building and site.

C409.2.3 District energy. This category shall include all net energy extracted from district steam systems, district chilled water loops, district hot water systems, or other energy sources serving multiple buildings.

C409.2.4 Site-generated renewable energy. This category shall include all net energy generated from on-site solar, wind, geothermal, tidal or other natural sources, and waste heat reclaimed from sewers or other off-site sources. For buildings exempt from data collection systems, the data from these meters is permitted to either be stored locally using a manual totalizing meter or other means at the meter or fed into a central data collection system.

C409.3 End-use metering. Meters shall be provided to collect energy use data for each end-use category listed in Sections C409.3.1 through C409.3.7. These meters shall collect data for the whole building or for each separately metered portion of the building where not exempted by the exception to Section C409.1. Not more than 10 percent of the total connected load of any of the end-use metering categories in Sections C409.3.1 through C409.3.6 is permitted to be excluded from that end-use data collection. Not more than 10 percent of the total connected load of any of the end-use metering categories in Sections C409.3.1 through C409.3.6 is permitted to consist of loads not part of that category. Multiple meters may be used for any end-use category, provided that the data acquisition system totals all of the energy used by that category. Full-floor tenant space submetering data shall be provided to the tenant in accordance with Section C409.3.7, and the data shall not be required to be included in other end-use categories.

Exceptions:

1. HVAC and service water heating equipment serving only an individual dwelling unit or sleeping unit does not require end-use metering.
2. Separate metering is not required for fire pumps, stairwell pressurization fans or other life safety systems that operate only during testing or emergency.
3. End use metering is not required for individual tenant spaces not exceeding 2,500 square feet in floor area when a dedicated source meter meeting the requirements of Section C409.4.1 is provided for the tenant space.
4. Healthcare facilities with loads in excess of 150 kVA are permitted to have submetering that measures electrical energy usage in accordance with the normal and essential electrical systems as identified in Section 517 of the Seattle Electrical Code except that submetering is required for the following load categories:
   4.1. HVAC system energy use in accordance with the requirements of Section C409.3.1.
   4.2. Service water heating energy use in accordance with the requirements of Section C409.3.2.
   4.3. Process load system energy in accordance with the requirements of Section ((~~C409.3.5~~)) C409.3.6 for each significant facility not used in direct patient care, including but not limited to, food service, laundry and sterile processing facilities, where the total connected load of the facility exceeds 100 kVA.
5. End-use metering is not required for electrical circuits serving only land guest suites within Group R-1 occupancies. This exception does not apply to common areas or to equipment serving multiple sleeping rooms.

C409.3.1 HVAC system energy use. This category shall include all energy including electrical, gas, liquid fuel, district steam and district chilled water that is used by boilers, chillers, pumps, fans and other equipment used to provide space heating, space cooling, dehumidification and ventilation to the building, but not including energy that serves process loads, service water heating or miscellaneous loads as defined in Section C409.3. Multiple HVAC energy sources, such as gas, electric and steam, are not required to be summed together.

Exceptions:

1. 120 volt equipment.
2. An HVAC branch circuit where the total MCA of equipment served equates to less than 10 kVA.
3. Individual fans or pumps that are not on a variable frequency drive.

C409.3.2 Service water heating energy use. This category shall include all energy used for heating of domestic and service hot water, but not energy used for space heating.

Exception: Service water heating energy use less than 50 kVA does not require end-use metering.

C409.3.3 Lighting system energy use. This category shall include all energy used by interior and exterior lighting, including lighting in parking structures and lots, but not including plug-in task lighting.

C409.3.4 Electric vehicle charging energy use. This category shall include all energy used for electrical vehicle charging. For buildings exempt from data collection systems, the data from these meters is permitted to either be stored locally using a manual totalizing meter or other means at the meter or fed into a central data collection system.

C409.3.5 Plug load system energy use. This category shall include all energy used by appliances, computers, plug-in task lighting, and other equipment or equipment covered by other end-use metering categories listed in Section C409.3. In a building where the main service is 480/277 volt, each 208/120 volt panel is permitted to be assumed to serve only plug load for the purpose of Section C409, unless it serves nonresidential refrigeration or cooking equipment.

Exception: Where the total connected load of all plug load circuits is less than 50 kVA end-use metering is not required.

C409.3.6 Process load system energy use. This category shall include all energy used by any non-building process load, including but not limited to nonresidential refrigeration and cooking equipment, laundry equipment, industrial equipment and stage lighting.

Exception: Where the process load energy use is less than 50 kVA, end-use metering is not required.

C409.3.7 Full-floor tenant space electrical submetering. In a multi-tenant building where more than 90 percent of the leasable area of a floor is occupied by a single tenant, an electrical energy use display shall be provided to the tenant in accordance with the requirements of Section C409.4.3. Electrical loads from areas outside of the tenant space or from equipment that serves areas outside of the tenant space shall not be included in the tenant space submetering. A single display is permitted to serve multiple floors occupied by the same tenant.

C409.4 Measurement devices, data acquisition system and energy display.

C409.4.1 Meters. Meters and other measurement devices required by this section shall have local displays or be configured to automatically communicate energy data to a data acquisition system. Source meters may be any digital-type meters. Current sensors or flow meters are allowed for end use metering, provided that they have an accuracy of +/- 5%. All required metering systems and equipment shall provide at least hourly data that is fully integrated into the data acquisition and display system per the requirements of Section C409.

C409.4.2 Data acquisition system. The data acquisition system shall store the data from the required meters and other sensing devices in a single database for a minimum of 36 months. For each energy supply and end use category required by C409.2 and C409.3, it shall provide real-time energy consumption data and logged data for any hour, day, month or year.

C409.4.3 Energy display. For each building subject to Section C409.2 and C409.3, either a visible display in a location with *ready access,* or a single web page or other electronic document available for access to building management or to a third-party energy data analysis service shall be provided in the building available for access to building operation and management personnel. The display shall graphically provide the current energy consumption rate for each whole building energy source, plus each end use category, as well as the total and ((~~peak~~)) maximum hourly consumption values for any day, week, month and year.

((~~The display shall graphically provide the current energy consumption rate for each whole building energy source, plus each end-use category, as well as the total and peak values for any day, week, month and year.~~)) The display shall be capable of and configured to graphically display the energy use data for any source or end use category or any combination of sources and end uses for any selected daily, weekly, monthly or annual time period, and to view the selected time period simultaneously with another selected time period or a reference benchmark time period. The display shall be capable of weather-normalizing data in the comparison time periods, and facilitate display of energy use trends and identification of anomalies.

C409.4.4 Commissioning. Energy metering and energy consumption management systems shall be commissioned in accordance with Section ((~~C408~~)) C408.6.

((~~C409.5 Metering for existing buildings.~~

~~C409.5.1 Existing buildings that were constructed subject to the requirements of this section.~~ ~~Where new or replacement systems or equipment are installed in an existing building that was constructed subject to the requirements of this section, metering shall be provided for such new or replacement systems or equipment so that their energy use is included in the corresponding end-use category defined in Section C409.3. This includes systems or equipment added in conjunction with additions or alterations to existing buildings.~~

~~C409.5.1.1 Small existing buildings.~~ ~~Metering and data acquisition systems shall be provided for additions over 25,000 square feet to buildings that were constructed subject to the requirements of this section, in accordance with the requirements of Sections C409.2 and C409.3.~~))

SDCI Informative Note: Section C409.5 regarding metering for existing buildings is relocated to Section 506.1.

SECTION C410
** REFRIGERATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

C410.1 General. Walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers, refrigerated warehouse freezers, and refrigerated display cases shall comply with this Section.

Refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers shall comply with Section C402. Section C402.1.5, Component performance alternative, may be used if granted prior approval by the jurisdiction.

C410.1.1 Refrigeration equipment performance. Refrigeration equipment shall have an energy use in kWh/day not greater than the values of Tables C410.1.1(1) and C410.1.1(2) when tested and rated in accordance with AHRI Standard 1200. The energy use shall be verified through certification under an approved certification program or, where a certification program does not exist, the energy use shall be supported by data furnished by the equipment manufacturer.

TABLE C410.1.1(1)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL REFRIGERATION

EQUIPMENT TYPE	APPLICATION	ENERGY USE LIMITS (kWh per day)[a]	TEST PROCEDURE
Refrigerator with solid doors	Holding Temperature	0.10 × V + 2.04	AHRI 1200
Refrigerator with transparent doors		0.12 × V + 3.34	
Freezers with solid doors		0.40 × V + 1.38	
Freezers with transparent doors		0.75 × V + 4.10	
Refrigerator/freezers with solid doors		The greater of 0.12 × V + 3.34 or 0.70	
Commercial refrigerators	Pulldown	0.126 × V + 3.51	

a. V = Volume of the chiller for frozen compartment as defined in AHAM-HRF-1.

TABLE C410.1.1(2)
MINIMUM EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS: COMMERCIAL REFRIGERATORS AND FREEZERS

EQUIPMENT TYPE				ENERGY USE LIMITS (kWh per day)[a,b]	TEST PROCEDURE
Equipment Class[c]	Family Code	Operating Mode	Rating Temperature		
VOP.RC.M	Vertical open	Remote condensing	Medium	0.82 × TDA + 4.07	AHRI 1200
SVO.RC.M	Semivertical open	Remote condensing	Medium	0.83 × TDA + 3.18	
HZO.RC.M	Horizontal open	Remote condensing	Medium	0.35 × TDA + 2.88	
VOP.RC.L	Vertical open	Remote condensing	Low	2.27 × TDA + 6.85	
HZO.RC.L	Horizontal open	Remote condensing	Low	0.57 × TDA + 6.88	
VCT.RC.M	Vertical transparent door	Remote condensing	Medium	0.22 × TDA + 1.95	
VCT.RC.L	Vertical transparent door	Remote condensing	Low	0.56 × TDA + 2.61	
SOC.RC.M	Service over counter	Remote condensing	Medium	0.51 × TDA + 0.11	
VOP.SC.M	Vertical open	Self-contained	Medium	1.74 × TDA + 4.71	
SVO.SC.M	Semivertical open	Self-contained	Medium	1.73 × TDA + 4.59	
HZO.SC.M	Horizontal open	Self-contained	Medium	0.77 × TDA + 5.55	
HZO.SC.L	Horizontal open	Self-contained	Low	1.92 × TDA + 7.08	
VCT.SC.I	Vertical transparent door	Self-contained	Ice cream	0.67 × TDA + 3.29	
VCS.SC.I	Vertical solid door	Self-contained	Ice cream	0.38 × V + 0.88	
HCT.SC.I	Horizontal transparent door	Self-contained	Ice cream	0.56 × TDA + 0.43	
SVO.RC.L	Semivertical open	Remote condensing	Low	2.27 × TDA + 6.85	
VOP.RC.I	Vertical open	Remote condensing	Ice cream	2.89 × TDA + 8.7	
SVO.RC.I	Semivertical open	Remote condensing	Ice cream	2.89 × TDA + 8.7	
HZO.RC.I	Horizontal open	Remote condensing	Ice cream	0.72 × TDA + 8.74	
VCT.RC.I	Vertical transparent door	Remote condensing	Ice cream	0.66 × TDA + 3.05	
HCT.RC.M	Horizontal transparent door	Remote condensing	Medium	0.16 × TDA + 0.13	
HCT.RC.L	Horizontal transparent door	Remote condensing	Low	0.34 × TDA + 0.26	
HCT.RC.I	Horizontal transparent door	Remote condensing	Ice cream	0.4 × TDA + 0.31	
VCS.RC.M	Vertical solid door	Remote condensing	Medium	0.11 × V + 0.26	
VCS.RC.L	Vertical solid door	Remote condensing	Low	0.23 × V + 0.54	
VCS.RC.I	Vertical solid door	Remote condensing	Ice cream	0.27 × V + 0.63	
HCS.RC.M	Horizontal solid door	Remote condensing	Medium	0.11 × V + 0.26	
HCS.RC.L	Horizontal solid door	Remote condensing	Low	0.23 × V + 0.54	
HCS.RC.I	Horizontal solid door	Remote condensing	Ice cream	0.27 × V + 0.63	
SOC.RC.L	Service over counter	Remote condensing	Low	1.08 × TDA + 0.22	
SOC.RC.I	Service over counter	Remote condensing	Ice cream	1.26 × TDA + 0.26	
VOP.SC.L	Vertical open	Self-contained	Low	4.37 × TDA + 11.82	
VOP.SC.I	Vertical open	Self-contained	Ice cream	5.55 × TDA + 15.02	
SVO.SC.L	Semivertical open	Self-contained	Low	4.34 × TDA + 11.51	
SVO.SC.I	Semivertical open	Self-contained	Ice cream	5.52 × TDA + 14.63	
HZO.SC.I	Horizontal open	Self-contained	Ice cream	2.44 × TDA + 9.0	AHRI 1200
SOC.SC.I	Service over counter	Self-contained	Ice cream	1.76 × TDA + 0.36	
HCS.SC.I	Horizontal solid door	Self-contained	Ice cream	0.38 × V + 0.88	

a V = Volume of the case, as measured in accordance with Appendix C of AHRI 1200.

b TDA = Total display area of the case, as measured in accordance with Appendix D of AHRI 1200.

c Equipment class designations consist of a combination [(in sequential order separated by periods (AAA).(BB).(C))] of:

(AAA) An equipment family code where:

VOP = Vertical open

SVO = Semi-vertical open

HZO = Horizontal open

VCT = Vertical transparent doors

VCS = Vertical solid doors
HCT = Horizontal transparent doors
HCS = Horizontal solid doors
SOC = Service over counter

(BB) An operating mode code:
RC = Remote condensing
SC = Self-contained

(C) A rating temperature code:
M = Medium temperature (38°F)
L = Low temperature (0°F)
I = Ice cream temperature (15°F)

For example, "VOP.RC.M" refers to the "vertical-open, remote-condensing, medium-temperature" equipment class.

C410.2 Walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers and refrigerated warehouse freezers. *Refrigerated warehouse coolers, refrigerated warehouse freezers,* and all *walk-in coolers* and *walk-in freezers* including site assembled, site constructed and prefabricated units shall comply with the following. ((÷)) Where they comprise any portion of the thermal envelope of the building, they shall comply with the requirements of Section C402, using the *R*-values or *U*-values listed in this Section C410.2. Section C402.1.5 component performance alternative is permitted to be used where *approved* by the *code official.*

1. *Automatic* door-closers shall be provided that fully close walk-in doors that have been closed to within 1 inch (25 mm) of full closure.

   Exception: *Automatic* closers are not required for doors more than 45 inches (1143 mm) in width or more than 7 feet (2134 mm) in height.

2. Doorways shall be provided with strip doors, curtains, spring-hinged doors or other method of minimizing infiltration when doors are open.
3. *Walk-in coolers* and *refrigerated warehouse coolers* shall be provided with wall, ceiling, and door insulation of not less than R-25 or have wall, ceiling and door assembly *U*-factors no greater than *U*-0.039. *Walk-in freezers* and *refrigerated warehouse freezers* shall be provided with wall, ceiling and door insulation of not less than R-32 or have wall, ceiling and door assembly *U*-factors no greater than *U*-0.030.

   Exception: Insulation is not required for glazed portions of doors or at structural members associated with the walls, ceiling or door frame.

4. The floor of *walk-in coolers* shall be provided with floor insulation of not less than R-25 or have a floor assembly *U*-factor no greater than *U*-0.040. The floor of *walk-in freezers* shall be provided with floor insulation of not less than R-28 or have a floor assembly *U*-factor no greater than *U*-0.035.

   Exception: Insulation is not required in the floor of a *walk-in cooler* that is mounted directly on a slab on grade.

5. Transparent fixed windows and reach-in doors for *walk-in freezers* and windows in *walk-in freezer* doors shall be provided with triple-pane glass, with the interstitial spaces filled with inert gas, or be provided with heat-reflective treated glass.
6. Transparent fixed windows and reach-in doors for *walk-in coolers* and windows for *walk-in cooler* doors shall be provided with double-pane or triple-pane glass, with interstitial spaces filled with inert gas, or be provided with heat-reflective treated glass.
7. Evaporator fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) and less than 460 volts shall be provided with electronically commutated motors, brushless direct-current motors, or 3-phase motors.
8. Condenser fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.746 kW) shall use electronically commutated motors, permanent split capacitor-type motors or 3-phase motors.
9. Antisweat heaters that are not provided with antisweat heater controls shall have a total door rail, glass and frame heater power draw of not greater than 7.1 W/ft^2 (76 W/m^2) of door opening for *walk-in freezers* and not greater than 3.0 W/ft^2 (32 W/m^2) of door opening for *walk-in coolers.*
10. Where antisweat heater controls are provided, they shall be capable of reducing the energy use of the antisweat heater as a function of the relative humidity in the air outside the door or to the condensation on the inner glass pane.
11. Lights in *walk-in coolers, walk-in freezers, refrigerated warehouse coolers* and *refrigerated warehouse freezers* shall either be provided with light sources with an efficacy of not less than 40 lumens per watt, including ballast losses, or shall be provided with a device that turns off the lights within 15 minutes of when the *walk-in cooler* or *walk-in freezer* space is not occupied.
12. Evaporator fans in refrigerated warehouses shall be variable speed, and the speed shall be controlled in response to space conditions.

Exception: Evaporators served by a single compressor without unloading capability.

C410.2.1 Performance standards. Site-assembled and site-constructed walk-in coolers and walk-in freezers shall meet the requirements of Tables C410.2.1.1(1), C410.2.1.1(2) and C410.2.1.1(3).

TABLE C410.2.1.1(1)
WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER DISPLAY DOORS EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

Class Description	Class	Maximum Energy Consumption (kWh/day)[a]
Display Door, Medium Temperature	DD, M	$0.04 \times A_{dd} + 0.41$
Display Door, Low Temperature	DD, L	$0.15 \times A_{dd} + 0.29$

a. A_{dd} is the surface area of the display door

TABLE C410.2.1.1(2)
WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER NON-DISPLAY DOORS EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

Class Description	Class	Maximum Energy Consumption (kWh/day)[a]
Passage Door, Medium Temperature	PD, M	$0.05 \times A_{nd} + 1.7$
Passage Door, Low Temperature	PD, L	$0.14 \times A_{nd} + 4.8$
Freight Door, Medium Temperature	FD, M	$0.04 \times A_{nd} + 1.9$
Freight Door, Low Temperature	FD, L	$0.12 \times A_{nd} + 5.6$

a. A_{nd} is the surface area of the display door

TABLE C410.2.1.1(3)
WALK-IN COOLER AND FREEZER REFRIGERATION SYSTEMS EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS

Class Description	Class	Minimum Annual Walk-in Energy Factor AWEF (Btu/hW-h)
Dedicated Condensing, Medium Temperature, Indoor System	DC.M.I	5.61
Dedicated Condensing, Medium Temperature, Indoor System, > 9,000 Btu/h Capacity	DC.M.I, > 9,000	5.61
Dedicated Condensing, Medium Temperature, Outdoor System	DC.MI	7.60
Dedicated Condensing, Medium Temperature, Outdoor System, > 9,000 Btu/h Capacity	DC.M.I, > 9,000	7.60

C410.2.2 Refrigerated display cases. Site-assembled or site-constructed refrigerated display cases shall comply with the following:

1. Lighting and glass doors in refrigerated display cases shall be controlled by one of the following:
   1.1. Time switch controls to turn off lights during nonbusiness hours. Timed overrides for display cases shall turn the lights on for up to 1 hour and shall automatically time out to turn the lights off.
   1.2. Motion sensor controls on each display case section that reduce lighting power by at least 50 percent within 3 minutes after the area within the sensor range is vacated.
2. Low-temperature display cases shall incorporate temperature-based defrost termination control with a time-limit default. The defrost cycle shall terminate first on an upper temperature limit breach and second upon a time limit breach.
3. Antisweat heater controls shall reduce the energy use of the antisweat heater as a function of the relative humidity in the air outside the door or to the condensation on the inner glass pane.

C410.3 Refrigeration systems. Refrigerated display cases, *walk-in coolers* or *walk-in freezers* that are served by remote compressors and remote condensers not located in a *condensing unit*, shall comply with Sections C410.3.1, C410.3.2, and C403.9.2.3.

Exception: Systems where the working fluid in the refrigeration cycle goes through both subcritical and supercritical states (transcritical) or that use ammonia refrigerant are exempt.

C410.3.1 Condensers serving refrigeration systems. Fan-powered condensers shall comply with the following:

1. The design *saturated condensing temperatures* for air-cooled condensers shall not exceed the design dry-bulb temperature plus 10°F (5.6°C) for *low-temperature refrigeration systems*, and the design dry-bulb temperature plus 15°F (8°C) for *medium temperature refrigeration systems* where the *saturated condensing temperature* for blend refrigerants shall be determined using the average of liquid and vapor temperatures as converted from the condenser drain pressure.
2. Condenser fan motors that are less than 1 hp (0.75 kW) shall use electronically commutated motors, permanent split-capacitor-type motors or 3-phase motors.

3. Condenser fans for air-cooled condensers, evaporatively cooled condensers, air- or water-cooled fluid coolers or cooling towers shall reduce fan motor demand to not more than 30 percent of design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume, and incorporate one of the following continuous variable speed fan control approaches:

   3.1. Refrigeration system condenser control for air-cooled condensers shall use variable set point control logic to reset the condensing temperature set point in response to ambient dry-bulb temperature.

   3.2. Refrigeration system condenser control for evaporatively cooled condensers shall use variable set point control logic to reset the condensing temperature set point in response to ambient wet-bulb temperature.

4. Multiple fan condensers shall be controlled in unison.

5. The minimum condensing temperature set point shall be not greater than 70°F (21°C).

C410.3.2 Compressor systems. Refrigeration compressor systems shall comply with the following:

1. Compressors and multiple-compressor system suction groups shall include control systems that use floating suction pressure control logic to reset the target suction pressure temperature based on the temperature requirements of the attached refrigeration display cases or walk-ins.

   Exception: Controls are not required for the following:

   1. Single-compressor systems that do not have variable capacity capability.
   2. Suction groups that have a design saturated suction temperature of 30°F (-1.1°C) or higher, suction groups that comprise the high stage of a two-stage or cascade system, or suction groups that primarily serve chillers for secondary cooling fluids.

2. Liquid subcooling shall be provided for all low-temperature compressor systems with a design cooling capacity equal to or greater than 100,000 Btu/hr (29.3 kW) with a design-saturated suction temperature of -10°F (-23°C) or lower. The subcooled liquid temperature shall be controlled at a maximum temperature set point of 50°F (10°C) at the exit of the subcooler using either compressor economizer (interstage) ports or a separate compressor suction group operating at a saturated suction temperature of 18°F (-7.8°C) or higher.

   2.1. Insulation for liquid lines with a fluid operating temperature less than 60°F (15.6°C) shall comply with Table ((~~C403.2.10~~)) C403.10.3.

3. Compressors that incorporate internal or external crankcase heaters shall provide a means to cycle the heaters off during compressor operation.

4. Compressor systems utilized in refrigerated warehouses shall conform to the following:

   4.1. Compressors shall be designed to operate at a minimum condensing temperature of 70°F or less.

   4.2. The compressor speed of a screw compressor greater than 50 hp shall be controllable in response to the refrigeration load or the input power to the compressor shall be controlled to use no more than 60 percent of full load input power when operated at 50 percent of full refrigeration capacity.

      Exception: Refrigeration plants with more than one dedicated compressor per suction group.

C410.4 Commissioning. Refrigeration systems shall be commissioned in accordance with Section C408.

Exception: Self-contained units.

SECTION C411
SOLAR READINESS

C411.1 General. ((~~A~~)) In addition to the requirements of Section C412, a *solar zone* shall be provided on ((~~non-residential~~)) buildings that are 20 stories or less in height above grade plane. The *solar zone* shall be located on the roof of the building or on another structure elsewhere on the site. The *solar zone* shall be in accordance with Sections C411.2 through C411.8 and the *International Fire Code.*

Exception. A *solar zone* is not required where the solar exposure of the building's roof area is less than 75 percent of that of an unshaded area, as defined in Section C411.5, in the same location, as measured by one of the following:

1. Incident solar radiation expressed in kWh/ft^2-yr using typical meteorological year (TMY) data;
2. Annual sunlight exposure expressed in cumulative hours per year using TMY data;
3. Shadow studies indicating that the roof area is more than 25 percent in shadow, on September 21 at 10am, 11am, 12pm, 1pm, and 2pm solar time.

C411.2 Minimum area. The minimum area of the *solar zone* shall be determined by one of the following methods, whichever results in the smaller area:

1. 40 percent of roof area. The roof area shall be calculated as the horizontally-projected gross roof area less the area covered by skylights, occupied roof decks, mechanical equipment, and planted areas.
2. 20 percent of electrical service size. The electrical service size is the rated capacity of the total of all electrical services to the building, and the required solar zone size shall be based upon 10 peak watts of photovoltaic per square foot.

   Exception. Subject to the approval of the *code official,* buildings with extensive rooftop equipment that would make full compliance with this section impractical shall be permitted to reduce the size of the solar zone required by Section C411.2 to the maximum practicable area.

Example: A building with a 10,000 SF total roof area, 1,000 SF skylight area, and a 400 Amp, 240-volt single phase electrical service is required to provide a solar zone area of the smaller of the following:

1. [40% x (10,000 SF roof area – 1,000 SF skylights)] = 3,600 SF; or
2. [400 Amp x 240 Volts x 20% / 10 watts per SF] = 1,920 SF

Therefore, a *solar zone* of 1,920 square feet is required.

C411.3 Contiguous area. The *solar zone* is permitted to be comprised of separated sub-zones. Each sub-zone shall be at least 5 feet wide in the narrowest dimension.

C411.4 Obstructions. The *solar zone* shall be free of pipes, vents, ducts, HVAC equipment, skylights and other obstructions, except those serving photovoltaic systems within the *solar zone.* The *solar zone* is permitted to be located above any such obstructions, provided that the racking for support of the future system is installed at the time of construction, the elevated *solar zone* does not shade other portions of the solar zone, and its height is permitted by the *International Building Code* and the Seattle Land Use Code. Photovoltaic or solar water heating systems are permitted to be installed within the solar zone.

C411.5 Shading. The *solar zone* shall be set back from any existing or new object on the building or site that is located south, east, or west of the *solar zone* a distance at least two times the object's height above the nearest point on the roof surface. Such objects include but are not limited to taller portions of the building itself, parapets, chimneys, antennas, signage, rooftop equipment, trees and roof plantings. No portion of the *solar zone* shall be located on a roof slope greater than 2:12 that faces within 45 degrees of true north.

C411.6 Access. Areas contiguous to the *solar zone* shall provide access pathways and provisions for emergency smoke ventilation as required by the *International Fire Code.*

C411.7 Structural integrity. The as-designed dead load and live load for the *solar zone* shall be clearly marked on the record drawings and shall accommodate future photovoltaic system arrays at an assumed dead load of 4 pounds per square foot in addition to other required live and dead loads. A location for future inverters shall be designated either within or adjacent to the *solar zone,* with a minimum area of 2 square feet for each 1000 square feet of *solar zone* area, and shall accommodate an assumed dead load of 175 pounds per square foot. Where photovoltaic systems are installed in the *solar zone,* structural analysis shall be based upon calculated loads, not upon these assumed loads.

C411.8 Photovoltaic interconnection. A minimum 2-inch diameter roof penetration conduit shall be provided, with threaded caps above and below the roof deck and minimum R-10 insulation wrapping the lower portion, within each 2,500-square-foot section of the required *solar zone* area. Interconnection of the future photovoltaic system shall be provided for at the main service panel, either ahead of the service disconnecting means or at the end of the bus opposite the service disconnecting means, in one of the following forms:

1. A space for the mounting of a future overcurrent device, sized to accommodate the largest standard rated overcurrent device that is less than 20 percent of the bus rating.
2. Lugs sized to accommodate conductors with an ampacity of at least 20 percent of the bus rating, to enable the mounting of an external overcurrent device for interconnection.

The electrical construction documents shall indicate the following:

1. Solar zone boundaries and access pathways;
2. Location for future inverters and metering equipment; and
3. Route for future wiring between the photovoltaic panels and the inverter, and between the inverter and the main service panel.

SECTION C412
RENEWABLE ENERGY

C412.1 On-site renewable energy systems. Each new building or *addition* larger than 5,000 square feet of gross conditioned floor area shall include a renewable energy generation system consisting of not less than 0.25 watts rated peak photovoltaic energy production per square foot of *conditioned space.*

Exceptions:

1. Increased additional energy credits. Where 3.0 additional energy credits from Table C406.1 are provided in addition to those required by other sections of this code, the on-site renewable energy generation system is not required.
    1.1. Where 1.0 additional energy credits from Table C406.1 is provided in addition to those required by other sections of this code, the size of the on-site renewable energy generation system is permitted to be reduced by 1/3.
    1.2. Where 2.0 additional energy credits from Table C406.1 are provided in addition to those required by other sections of this code, the size of the on-site renewable energy generation system is permitted to be reduced by 2/3.
    1.3. Where approved by SDCI, interpolation between exceptions 1, 1.1, and 1.2 is permitted.
2. Reduced Building Performance Factor. For projects utilizing the Section C407 Total Building Performance compliance path, the on-site renewable energy generation system is not required where the building performance factor (BPF) is not less than 3 percent lower than the maximum BPF permitted cumulatively by all other sections of this code.

Example: To use this exception, a building with a required BPF of 50 would be required to provide a BPF of (50 x 0.97 =) 48.5 instead.

    2.1. Where the BPF is not less than 1 percent lower than the BPF required cumulatively by other sections of this code, the size of the on-site renewable energy generation system is permitted to be reduced by 1/3.
    2.1. Where the BPF is not less than 2 percent lower than the BPF required cumulatively by other sections of this code, the size of the on-site renewable energy generation system is permitted to be reduced by 2/3.
3. Transfer to an *affordable housing* project. Where *approved* by SDCI, all or part of the required on-site renewable energy generation system is permitted to be replaced by construction of a system that is 50 percent of the required system size when located on an existing *affordable housing* project within the city of Seattle, or 75 percent of the required system size when located on a new construction *affordable housing* project within the city of Seattle. Documentation demonstrating that the renewable energy generation system has been installed on the *affordable housing* project site, the system is fully operational, and ownership has been transferred to the owner of the *affordable housing* project, must be submitted prior to issuance of the certificate of occupancy.

SDCI Informative Note: Option 3 will only be available if an affordable housing project is available to accept the renewable energy system. There is no assurance that such a project location will be available. It is the owner's responsibility to locate and coordinate with the affordable housing project, and to ensure that the installation is completed in a timely manner.

4. Transfer to a Washington State agency program. Where *approved* by SDCI, all or part of the required renewable energy generation system is permitted to be replaced by a contribution of $2.50 for each required watt of installed capacity, to a solar energy fund managed by a Washington state agency that will provide solar energy installations for *affordable housing* projects. Documentation demonstrating that the contribution has been received by the state agency must be submitted prior to issuance of the certificate of occupancy.

SDCI Informative Note: Option 4 will only be available if a solar energy fund for affordable housing is created by the Housing Trust Fund, Washington State Housing Finance Commission, or another state agency program for which the project is qualified to participate. There is no assurance that such a program will be available.

5. *Affordable housing.* The on-site renewable energy generation system is not required for *affordable housing* projects.